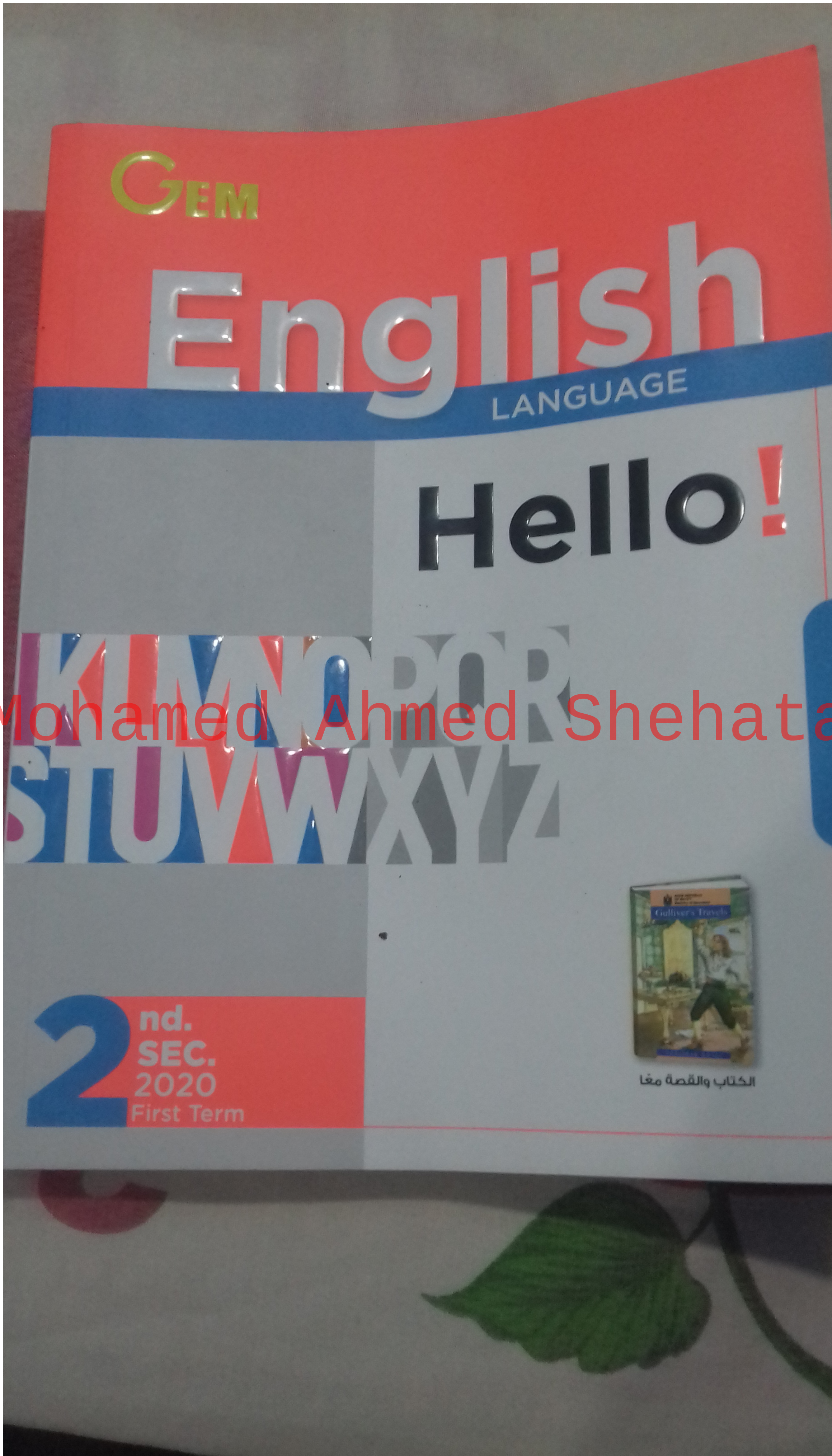

GEM
English
LANGUAGE
Hello!
KLMNOPQR
STUVWXYZ
2 nd.
SEC.
2020
First Term
Gulliver's Travels
الكتاب والقصة معًا

GEM

HELLO!

English For Secondary Schools

&

GULLIVER'S TRAVELS

الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

By

Emad Fawzy
Mohamed Abdel Aal
Ahmed Fadel
Ayman M. Ebrahim
Yacoub Moawad

NAHDET MISR

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

قال الله - تعالى - : ﴿ اقْرَأْ وَرَبُّكَ الْأَكْرَمُ ۝ الَّذِي عَلَّمَ بِالْقَلَمِ ۝ عَلَّمَ الْإِنسَانَ مَا لَمْ يَعْلَمْ ﴾ سورة العلق (٣ - ٥)

وقال - تعالى - : ﴿ يَرْفَعِ اللَّهُ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا مِنكُمْ وَالَّذِينَ أُوتُوا الْعِلْمَ دَرَجَاتٍ ﴾ سورة المجادلة (١١)

Contents



Unit 1

Mohamed Ahmed Shehata

Enjoying Work

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist and specific information
Grammar	: Present simple, present continuous and past simple
Reading	: Reading for gist
Critical thinking	: Understanding the positive contributions older people can make to society and the importance of charities
Functions	: Expressing opinions with reasons
Writing	: Writing an application form

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم/ يتكيف
efficient (adj)	كفء
efficiency (n)	كفاءة
foundation (n)	مؤسسة
free of charge	بالمجان
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد
leader (n)	قائد
leadership (n)	قيادة
operation (n)	عملية (جراحية)
operate (v) (d)	يجرى عملية جراحية
retire (v) (d)	يتقاعد
retirement (n)	تقاعد
retired (adj)	متقاعد
trade delegation	وفد تجارى
surgeon (n)	جراح
surgery (n)	جراحة
transplant (n) (v) (ed)	زرع/ يزرع (أعضاء)
treatment (n)	علاج/ معاملة

Vocabulary on Listening

air conditioning (n)	نظام تكييف الهواء
air conditioner (n)	جهاز تكييف
bridge (n)	كوبرى/ جسر
civil engineer	مهندس مدنى
company (n)	شركة
customer (n)	زبون
dam (n)	سد
fantastic (adj)	رائع
friendly (adj)	لطيف/ ودود
headline (n)	عنوان (فى جريدة)
heat (n) (v) (ed)	حرارة/ يسخن
historical (adj)	تاريخى
improve (v) (d)	يُحسِّن/ يتحسن
international (adj)	دولى
interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة شخصية/ يجرى مقابلة شخصية
interviewer (n)	المُحَاوِر (من يجرى الحوار)
interviewee (n)	المُحَاوَر (من يجرى معه الحوار)
modern (adj)	حديث/ عصرى
national (adj)	قومى/ وطنى
nationality (n)	جنسية
noisy (adj)	مزعج/ صاخب
partner (n)	شريك
proud (adj)	فخور
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/ يبلغ

research (n) (v) (ed)	بحث (علمى) / يقوم ببحث	trainee (n)	متدرب
train (v) (ed)	يدرب / يتدرب	uniform (n)	زى موحد
training (n)	تدريب	well-known (adj)	معروف / مشهور
trainer (n)	مدرب		

Vocabulary On Reading

article (n)	مقال	human (adj) (n)	بشرى / إنسان
cell (n)	خلية	include (v) (d)	يشمل / يتضمن
centre (n)	مركز	mean (v) meant	يعنى / يقصد
charity (n)	عمل خيرى / مؤسسة خيرية	medicine (n)	طب / دواء
charitable (adj)	خيرى	organisation (n)	منظمة
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	part (n)	جزء
experience (n)	خبرة	problem (n)	مشكلة
head (n)	رئيس	project (n)	مشروع
healthy (adj)	صحى / بصحة جيدة	qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
heart (n)	قلب	qualify (v) (y ied)	يتأهل
		qualified (adj)	مؤهَّل

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

accountant (n)	محاسب	arrange (v) (d)	يرتب
accounting (n)	محاسبة	birth (n)	ميلاد
address (n)	عنوان مكان	childhood (n)	طفولة
apply (v) (y ied)	يتقدم بطلب	continue (v) (d)	يستمر
application (n)	طلب وظيفة	decision (n)	قرار
architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	design (v) (ed)	يصمم

details (n)	تفاصيل	necessary (adj)	ضرورى
difference (n)	اختلاف	office building (n)	مبنى إدارى
education (n)	تعليم	online (adj)	على الإنترنت
expression (n)	تعبير	part-time (adj)	بدوام جزئى (وظيفة)
form (n)	استمارة	qualities (n)	صفات/ خصائص
full-time (adj)	بدوام كلى (وظيفة)	reason (n)	سبب
main (adj)	أساسى	relative (n)	أحد الأقارب
marital status (n)	الحالة الاجتماعية	single (adj)	أعزب
married (adj)	متزوج	society (n)	مجتمع
member (n)	فرد/ عضو	surname (n)	لقب العائلة

Focus on Vocabulary

adapt	يتأقلم	to change your ideas or behaviour in a new situation
efficient	كفء	describes someone or something that works well without wasting time or effort
free of charge	مجانى	without having to pay any money
foundation	مؤسسة	an organisation that gives money
grandchildren	أحفاد	the children of someone's son or daughter
leader	قائد/ زعيم	someone who commands a group, an organisation or a country
retire	يتقاعد	to leave your job and stop working at the end of your career

surgeon	جراح	a doctor who does operations in a hospital
trade delegation	وفد تجارى	a group that represents an organisation or a country in discussions about business
transplant	زرع أعضاء	a medical operation to put an organ into another person's body
treatment	علاج	medical care (drugs, exercise, etc.) to cure a patient with an illness or injury

Expressions & Idioms

apply in writing	يتقدم بطلب كتابة	get work experience	يحصل على الخبرة العملية
apply online	يتقدم بطلب على الإنترنت	have the experience	لديه الخبرة
around the world	حول العالم	have the qualifications	لديه المؤهلات
at this time	فى هذا الوقت	make Egypt richer	يجعل مصر أكثر ثراء
for this reason	لهذا السبب	pass exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	with heart problems	يعانى من مشكلات فى القلب

Phrases & Prepositions

apply for	يتقدم لـ	good at	جيد فى
come back	يرجع	good for	جيد لـ
complete with	يكمل بـ	report on	يقدم تقريرًا عن
die of	يموت بـ	speak for	يتحدث نيابة عن
fill in	يملأ/ يكمل		

Expressions with Do & Make

Do		Make	
do an operation	يجرى عملية جراحية	make parts	يصنع أجزاء
do work	يقوم بالعمل	make a difference	يُحدث فرقًا
do a job	يؤدى وظيفة	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
do a project	يقوم بمشروع	make a mistake	يخطئ
do research on/into	يقوم ببحث على	make money/a fortune	يجنى ثروة
do the shopping	يتسوق	make a profit	يحقق ربحًا
do the homework	يحل الواجب	make a choice	يختار
do the cleaning	يقوم بالتنظيف	make friends	يتخذ أصدقاء/ يكوّن صداقات
do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأطباق	make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراحًا
do the dusting	يقوم بإزالة الأتربة	make a promise	يَعِد
do the ironing	يقوم بكى الملابس	make the bed	يرتب الفراش
do the cooking	يقوم بعملية الطهى	make a noise	يثير ضوضاء
do a favour	يقدم خدمة أو معروفًا	make contributions	يقوم بإسهامات
do without	يستغنى عن	make arrangements	يقوم بعمل ترتيبات
do post-graduate studies	يكمل الدراسات العليا	make achievements	يحقق إنجازات

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
efficient	كفؤ	dynamic/ powerful	inefficient	غير كفؤ
improve	يُحسِّن/ يتحسن	promote	worsen	يسوء/ يتدهور
modern	حديث/ عصرى	contemporary	old-fashioned/ dated	قديم/ ذو طراز قديم
proud	فخور	honoured	ashamed	خجلان/ شاعر بالخزى

arrange	يرتب/ ينظم	organise	disarrange/ confuse	يربك
main	أساسى/ رئيسى	chief	secondary	ثانوى
necessary	ضرورى	essential	optional/ unnecessary	اختيارى/ غير ضرورى
conflict	تعارض/ صراع	struggle/ clash	agreement/ harmony	توافق/ انسجام

Notes on Vocabulary

work with — **work for** — **work in** — **work on** — **work as**

work with — يعمل/ يتعامل مع
- All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.

work for — يعمل لدى/ يعمل لصالح
- My brother works for a big company in the city.
- We all should work for the improvement of our society.

work in — يعمل فى
- I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.

work on — يعمل على (مشروع/ إنجاز)
- The writer said that he was working on a new novel.

work as — يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)
- My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al Ahram newspaper a long time ago.

work — **job** — **career**

work
١- عمل أو وظيفة (لا تجمع) ولا يسبقها أداة نكرة
٢- عمل أدبى أو فنى أو هندسى (تجمع)
- It's not easy to find work in Egypt nowadays.
- The works of Naguib Mahfouz were translated into many languages.

job — عمل أو وظيفة (تجمع) ويسبقها أداة
- My son is lucky as he has been offered a job in a good company.

career — حياة مهنية (فترة العمل بوظيفة أو مهنة)
- Hossam Hassan won a lot of medals during his career as a footballer.

qualify in | qualify as | qualify to

qualify in — يتأهل فى (الدراسة/ التخصص)
- After qualifying in medicine, my son worked at Helwan Hospital.

qualify as — يتأهل كـ (الوظيفة/ المهنة)
- Mr Ashraf qualified as a teacher of English in 1995.

qualify to + inf. — يتأهل لكى (يتبعها المصدر)
- The Faculty of Medicine is the only place that helps you qualify to be a doctor.

decide to | decide that | decide on

decide to + inf. — يقرر أن (يتبعها المصدر)
- Wafaa decided to stay in the hotel for two days.

decide that + a sentence — يقرر أن (يتبعها جملة كاملة)
- I decided that it would be best to tell my father the truth.

decide on + n/v-ing — يستقر على (يتبعها اسم أو v-ing)
- We decided on Sharm El-Sheikh for our holiday this year.

proud of | proud to | proud that

proud of + n/v-ing — فخور بـ (يتبعها اسم أو v-ing)
- We're so proud of our famous scientists such as Farouk El-Baz and Ahmed Zewail.

proud to + inf. — فخور أن (يتبعها المصدر)
- My uncle is proud to take part in the New Suez Canal Project.

proud that — فخور أن
- My uncle is proud that he took part in the New Suez Canal Project.

help

help + object + inf. / to + inf. — يساعد ...... أن
- My mother helped me do/ to do my homework.

help + object + with + شىء — يساعد ...... فى
- My mother helped me with my homework.

help in + n/v-ing — يساعد ...... فى/ على
- Many people are helping in the search for the missing boy.

adapt / adopt

adapt

١- يتأقلم / يتكيف
٢- يعدل شيئًا (لإعادة ملائمة أو استخدام)

- It took me a while to adapt to the new job.
- The play had been adapted for children.

adopt

١- يتبنى (طفل مثل الوالدين)
٢- يتبنى (فكر / رأى / سياسة)

- They have no children of their own, but they are hoping to adopt.
- We will have to adopt a more scientific approach in the future.

retire / resign

retire

١- يتقاعد (عن العمل)
٢- يخرج من سباق أو منافسة

- Since retiring from the company, she has done voluntary work for a charity.
- She retired from the competition after pulling a leg muscle.

resign يستقيل من عمل أو مهمة

- He resigned from the company in order to start a private business.

historic / historical

historic ذو أهمية تاريخية لأنه قديم أو مؤثر

- The coronation of a new king is, of course, a historic occasion.

historic

event حدث	moment لحظة	building مبنى	monuments آثار
day يوم	site موقع	occasion مناسبة	place مكان

historical (connected with history or with the past) مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ أو بالماضى

- The writer specializes in historical novels of the Arab World.

historical

character شخصية	events أحداث	novels روايات	films أفلام
studies دراسات	research بحث	plays مسرحيات	records سجلات

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He wasn't a hard-working student, so it took him nine years to qualify .... an architect.
a) in b) to c) as d) at

2 My uncle had a successful .... in banking which lasted for 30 years.
a) job b) work c) profession d) career

3 He has spent the last two years working .... a book about childcare.
a) with b) on c) for d) as

4 I've decided .... blue for painting the bedroom.
a) on b) at c) to d) for

5 My sister is very interested in .... novels and movies.
a) history b) historical c) historic d) historian

6 How do these insects .... themselves to new environments?
a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

7 My aunt became ill and had to .... as a teacher before reaching the age of 60.
a) employ b) resign c) retire d) qualify

8 Sameer offered to help me .... my homework.
a) for b) with c) at d) on

Listening Text

Voice (1)

Woman 1:

I enjoy my work. The company trains us well and gives us all a uniform(1) to wear. It's very comfortable working in a modern building with air conditioning(2). People come here from all over the world – most of them don't speak Arabic, so I use my English a lot. It's important that I'm friendly and efficient(3) – then the customer(4) will often use the company again.



(1) زى موحد
(2) تكييف هواء
(3) كفء
(4) زبون

Voice (2)

Man 1:

It's a hard job – working outside when it's hot, with noisy machines around you all the time. But I'm proud[5] to be helping to build a modern country. Our roads, bridges and dams will help to make Egypt richer, and that will be good for our children and our grandchildren[6].



(5) فخور
(6) أحفاد
(7) وفد تجاري
(8) قادة/ زعماء
(9) بحث علمي

Voice (3)

Woman 2:

My work is very exciting. Since I started the job two years ago, I've met important people from all over the world. A trade delegation[7] from Europe arrived in Egypt two weeks ago, so last week I was reporting on that story almost every day. I even met the leaders of France and Germany. My report was headline news in our paper at the weekend. Yesterday, I was interviewing business leaders[8] in Cairo.



Voice (4)

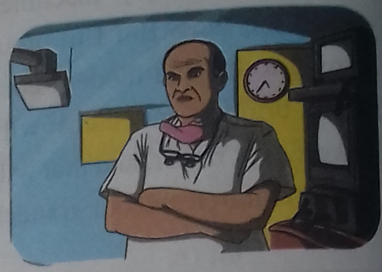
Woman 3:

I've wanted to do this kind of work since I saw my first computer at school. In my opinion, computers are fantastic and I've worked and played with them ever since that day at school. Now I work for a well-known Egyptian company that writes computer programs for important national and international companies. At the moment, I'm doing research[9] on a computer program for an Australian company.



Reading Text

Professor Magdi Yacoub



Professor Magdi Yacoub is a world-famous heart surgeon[1]. He was born in Egypt in Belbis in 1935, the son of a surgeon who worked in different places around the country. The family had to move every few years, so Yacoub learned to adapt[2] to living in different places and enjoyed meeting different people.

When his aunt died because of a heart problem, Yacoub decided to become a heart surgeon. He studied medicine at Cairo University and became a doctor in 1957. In the 1960s, he taught at Chicago University in the United States and worked with many of the world's best heart surgeons.

Now Yacoub had the qualifications and experience to do great things. In 1973, he became a heart surgeon at Harefield Hospital in England. While he was there, Harefield became the most important transplant[3] centre in the country.

In the early 1980s, he was part of the team which did the first British heart transplant operation[4]. At this time, Yacoub travelled thousands of kilometres in small planes to find healthy hearts for transplants.

Yacoub became Professor of Heart Surgery at London University in 1986. Although he retired as a surgeon in 2001, Yacoub continued to research new treatments[5]. He is now the head of the Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation[6], which is one of the largest charitable organisations[7] in Egypt.

In 2009, Yacoub's foundation opened the Aswan Heart Centre Project (AHC). This meant that many Egyptian patients with heart problems, including small babies, could have heart operations free of charge[8].

(1) جراح
(2) يتأقلم
(3) زرع أعضاء
(4) عملية جراحية
(5) علاج/معالجة
(6) مؤسسة
(7) منظمات خيرية
(8) بالمجان

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 I enjoy my work in this company.

I enjoy working for this company.

– يأتى بعد enjoy إما اسم وإما v-ing

2 It's a hard job – working outside in the heat with the noise of heavy machines around you all the time.

It's very comfortable working in a modern building with air conditioning.

– لاحظ استخدام (v-ing) فى التعبير التالى:

It's + صفة أو اسم موصوف + (v-ing) (من .... فعل ....)

3 I'm proud to be helping to build a modern country.

– بعد proud نستخدم غالبًا حرف الجر of بمعنى فخور بـ ولكن إذا جاء بعدها to نضع المصدر بمعنى فخور أن يفعل شيئًا.

4 Since I started the job two years ago, I've met important people from all over the world.

– يمكن أن تأتى since فى أول الجملة أو منتصفها ولكن فى كل الأحوال يأتى بعدها ماضٍ بسيط عندما يكون الزمن الآخر مضارعًا تامًا.

5 In the 1960s, he taught at Chicago University in the United States.

– السنوات تسبق دائمًا بـ in أما إذا جاء آخر السنة حرف s فمعناها الستينيات أو السبعينيات أو التسعينيات، وفى هذه الحالة تسبق السنة أداة التعريف the.

6 .... and I've worked and played with them ever since that day at school.

– لاحظ صيغة الفعل بعد (and) هى نفس صيغة الفعل قبلها، كما تستخدم (ever since) نفس استخدام (since).

7 Our roads, bridges and dams will help to make Egypt richer.

– الفعل (help) يتبعه (المصدر + to) أو المصدر فقط.

8 While he was there, Harefield became the most important transplant centre in the country.

– لاحظ استخدام صيغة الماضى البسيط (was) فقط بعد (while) وليس الماضى المستمر، وذلك لأن (v. to be) هو الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A trade .... of American business has arrived in Egypt for more talks.
a) headline b) worker c) car d) delegation

2 Dr Magdi Yacoub's .... has made many great advances in heart surgery in Egypt.
a) company b) firm c) foundation d) society

3 A .... is the person who directs or controls a group, an organisation or a country.
a) reader b) rider c) leader d) driver

4 Poor people don't have to pay for this meal. It's .... of charge.
a) free b) busy c) engaged d) occupied

5 My father had to have a/an .... on his knee, but he's fine now.
a) operation b) process c) co-operation d) healing

6 I think you have the suitable .... and experience to get this important job.
a) communications b) connections c) conservations d) qualifications

7 Mona wants to improve her English so that she can .... as a translator.
a) supply b) qualify c) reply d) comply

8 It wasn't easy for me to .... to the new regulations in our company's system.
a) adapt b) adopt c) admire d) admit

9 I've got much .... to do before meeting my colleagues.
a) works b) jobs c) careers d) work

10 Scientists try to find new .... for bird and seasonal flu.
a) agreements b) retirements c) treatments d) treaties

11 Workers should be .... in order to increase production.
a) lazy b) efficient c) difficult d) passive

12 More .... is needed into the ways in which this virus is spread.
a) search b) reserve c) recover d) research

13 The brain is the only part that can't be ....
a) transported b) transplanted c) planted d) transmitted

14 One of the disadvantages of old cars is that they don't often have air ....
a) heater b) screen c) filtering d) conditioning

15 My grandfather is still working after retirement because he thinks that his work .... a difference in people's lives.
a) performs b) does c) makes d) plays

16 The manager wishes he could become a .... in our company.
a) part b) surgeon c) servant d) partner

17 For nineteen years, my father worked .... this famous company.
a) for b) about c) as d) by

18 The clerk asked me to fill in a .... before he opened my account.
a) frame b) form c) letter d) receipt

19 Electric cars are good .... solving the pollution problem in big cities.
a) in b) by c) for d) with

20 My name is Soha Ahmed El-Sherif. So, El-Sherif is my ....
a) first name b) nickname c) title d) surname

21 People .... heart problems usually need special treatment.
a) for b) with c) of d) about

22 A .... is someone who is trained to perform operations that involve cutting open someone's body.
a) sergeant b) nurse c) surgeon d) servant

23 A/An .... is the person who keeps financial records of a company.
a) lawyer b) technician c) artist d) accountant

24 I suffered a lot during my .... after my father's death.
a) fatherhood b) brotherhood c) childhood d) motherhood

25 Pollution is a problem which should worry every .... of society.
a) organ b) member c) officer d) manager

26 Can you give me more .... about these English courses, please?
a) times b) plots c) chances d) details

27 The driver of the car was operated .... immediately after the accident.
a) in b) of c) on d) about

28 The company has .... the new worker to use the new security system.
a) trained b) treated c) proved d) prevented

29 I was .... of the team that won the gold medal in the Olympics.
a) port b) apart c) part d) party

30 She got the job because she has years of .... in the computer industry.
a) experiment b) experience c) expert d) experiences

31 She runs a local .... that gives books to poor children for free.
a) newspaper b) charity c) shop d) station

32 I have applied for several .... this year without success.
a) jobs b) professions c) careers d) works

33 Yacoub became Professor of Heart .... at London University in 1986.
a) Surgeon b) Surgeon c) Surgical d) Surgery

34 The interviewer asked the man about his .... status, and he said that he was married.
a) marry b) marital c) material d) medium

35 That boy loves to draw buildings! I believe that he will become .... when he grows up.
a) an editor b) a businessman c) an architect d) an artist

36 All our close .... were invited to my sister's wedding.
a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents

37 When I was at school I liked my .... It was red and grey and I loved wearing it.
a) assignment b) uniform c) classroom d) laboratory

38 This is the surgeon who .... on my uncle.
a) worked b) operated c) performed d) did

39 .... are important because they work on many projects, from bridges and waterways to road systems.
a) Civil engineers b) Architects c) Designers d) Managers

40 Most of the old buildings in Dubai have been demolished and replaced with .... tower blocks.
a) ancient b) old c) dated d) modern

41 We had to complete an .... form before we could join the competition.
a) application b) information c) intention d) appreciation

42 The news of the accident was front page .... of most newspapers.
a) address b) title c) speech d) talk

43 Professor Yacoub was part of a team which made new heart parts from .... cells.
a) plastic b) fabric c) humane d) human

44 I have to look my best as I'm having a/an .... for a new job.
a) review b) conference c) interview d) meeting

45 A very experienced heart surgeon will .... the operation on my father's heart.
a) have b) do c) make d) play

46 My sister qualified .... the German language and now works as a translator.
a) in b) to c) as d) at

47 The hotel staff were very .... and helpful to us during our stay.
a) lazy b) greedy c) bad d) friendly

48 Van Gogh is an artist who is .... for his paintings about nature.
a) well-organised b) well-known c) badly-known d) well-equipped

49 I'm very grateful to my friend for the favour he has .... to me.
a) had b) done c) made d) played

50 People usually get more and more worried when they approach the .... age.
a) retirement b) holiday c) vacation d) recuperation

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The word "secondary" is an antonym for the word ....
a) necessary b) polluted c) improved d) main

2 Democratic ideas are the .... for the political system that exists in the UK today.
a) organisation b) association c) foundation d) society

3 The new metro lines are scheduled to go into .... at the end of the year.
a) process b) operation c) wound d) direction

4 I took over the office when the last head was .... due to ill health.
a) left b) abandoned c) resigned d) retired

5 The postal authority operates a .... price system, so it always costs the same to send a letter anywhere.
a) different b) uniform c) neutral d) clothing

6 I plan to do everything in .... to get this job.
a) cause b) brain c) hurry d) reason

7 Egypt was one of the first teams to .... for Africa Cup of Nations this year.
a) qualify b) imply c) employ d) graduate

8 The word "contemporary" is a synonym for the word ....
a) ancient b) civilized c) modern d) behaved

9 Many people are hoping for the .... of the new research in the treatment of cancer.
a) information b) deducing c) enrolling d) application

10 You look distracted. You haven't been listening to a ....word I've been saying.
a) single b) double c) solo d) lone

Grammar

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Form: التكوين	He/She/It + (inf. + s/es/y ies) I/They/We/You + inf.	• My brother speaks English. • Most children like ice cream.
Negative: النفي	He/She/It + doesn't + inf. I/They/We/You + don't + inf.	• Ahmed doesn't like songs. • My parents don't play games.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Does he/she/it + inf.? Do I/they/we/you + inf.? Wh-word + does + he/she/it + inf.? Wh-word + do + we/you/they + inf.?	• Does Ibrahim like English? • Do they work hard? • What does she like? • What do they like?
Passive: المبني للمجهول	Obj. + am/is/are + p.p.	• Football is watched everywhere.

Usage الاستخدام

a) For general facts and laws of nature للحقائق العامة وقوانين الطبيعة

- Water boils at 100°C.

b) For repeated actions and daily routines. للأحداث المتكررة والروتين اليومي

- This magazine comes out every month.
- He takes the train to work every morning.

c) Situations which are true for a long time. المواقف الحقيقية لمدة طويلة

- My Uncle lives in Luxor.
- Most people like football.

d) After time conjunctions (after/before/by the time/when, etc.) to refer to the future.
يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع بعض الروابط الزمنية ليشير إلى المستقبل ويمكن استخدام المضارع التام أيضًا.

- After he finishes/has finished his homework, he will help you.

The present simple is used with the following time expressions:

usually, often, always, sometimes, never, ever, rarely, seldom, frequently, occasionally, regularly, generally, every (day/week/month/year ..), in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night, at the weekend, on Fridays, etc.

- I visit my relatives on Mondays.
- He never tells lies.
- I sometimes visit my relatives.
- It seldom rains in Egypt.

لاحظ

فعل + always/usually/never/sometimes/rarely + فاعل.

اسم/ صفة + always/usually/never/sometimes/rarely + v . to be + فاعل.

– تستخدم الظروف الدالة على التكرار بعد الفاعل وقبل الفعل الأساسى وإذا كان الفعل الأساسى v. to be فتستخدم بعده.

- He always (usually/sometimes/never) comes late.
- He is always (usually/sometimes/never) late (صفة).

– عندما تكون v. to be فعلًا أساسيًا لا نستخدم بعدها فعلًا آخر ولكن اسمًا أو صفة وفى النفى نستخدم am not/isn't/aren't ولا نستخدم don't/doesn't.

- My father is an accountant and he isn't happy with it.

لاحظ أنه عند استخدام never لا يتم حذف s , es , ies المضافة للفعل مع he , she , it.

- Nadia never drinks coffee in the morning.

Extra Points

A) For timetables: – يستخدم المضارع البسيط عند الحديث عن الجداول المحددة ليعبر عن المستقبل

- The plane from Cairo arrives at 8:30 tomorrow.

B) With verbs that describe sentiments, thoughts and states rather than activities:

– مع الأفعال الدالة على المشاعر والاعتقاد والحالة وهى ليست أفعالًا بها حركة أو نشاط:

- We want to live in peace, security and safety.
- I think that English enables us to know about other cultures.

C) Verb to (have) as a main verb with the present simple:

– لاحظ استخدام (have/has) مع المضارع البسيط كفعل أساسى ليس بعدها فعل آخر ولكن يأتى بعدها اسم أو اسم موصوف. وفى النفى نستخدم don't/doesn't have:

- My father has a new mobile phone.
- He doesn't have a computer.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hala rarely .... on her mother to do the homework.
   a) counted b) is counting c) counts d) count
2. My brother .... work at 5.30 most days.
   a) is leaving b) leaves c) has left d) don't leave
3. Mr Reda .... accurate. He gives correct and true details.
   a) is always b) always is c) always d) has always
4. My father .... spends much money on trivial تافه things.
   a) doesn't b) hasn't c) no d) never
5. After the school day ...., we will visit Ramy in the hospital.
   a) finishes b) had finished c) finished d) finish
6. Hassan .... to school on foot. He finds walking very painful.
   a) never go b) always goes c) never goes d) don't go
7. I .... that Mr. Rashad is an excellent teacher.
   a) believe b) am believing c) believing d) will believe
8. .... people should work in their 70s or 80s?
   a) Do you think b) Did you think c) Do you thinking d) Are you thinking
9. A vegetarian person .... meat at all.
   a) doesn't eat b) doesn't eats c) never eat d) always eats
10. Where .... their father work?
    a) do b) is c) does d) was

2 The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form: التكوين	Subj. + am/is/are + v-ing	▶ They are watching the match now.
Negative: النفى	Subj. + am not/isn't/aren't + v-ing.	▶ She isn't cooking dinner now.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Am/Is/Are + subj. + v-ing?	▶ Is Osama looking for a job nowadays?
	Wh-word + am/is/ are + subj + v-ing?	▶ What are you doing?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + am/is/are + being + p.p.	▶ Look! The dinner is being cooked.

Usage الاستخدام

1) For actions happening now to say that we are in the middle of the action. يستخدم للأحداث التى تحدث الآن.

- I'm waiting for the train. (I'm in the station now).
- They are playing football.

(The match is not over yet. لم تنته المباراة حتى الآن)

2) For actions that are going on around now but not at the actual moment of speaking. يستخدم لحدث مستمر ولكن ليس بالضرورة فى وقت الكلام

- She is working hard these days.

(تعمل بجد هذه الأيام وربما هى الآن تأكل أو تقرأ أو تنام)

3) For fixed arrangements in the near future. للأحداث التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل

- We are travelling to London tomorrow. (arranged action)
- Ali is meeting Mr Amgad next Saturday morning. (arranged action)

4) We use the expression (be + going to) to talk about future plans or intended actions. نســـتخدم be + going to للتعبير عن خطط المســـتقبل والأحداث التى ننوى فعلها قريبًا.

- I'm going to spend the weekend in my village. This is my intention. (plan or decision)

The present continuous is used with the following time expressions:

now, at the moment, these days, at present, still, nowadays, Look!, Listen!, etc.

- He is still working.
- It's raining at the moment.

ملاحظات هامة

– هناك كثير من الكلمات المشتركة بين الأزمنة والفيصل هو معرفة الزمن المناسب مثل now/still.

- He is still working as an engineer.
- He is still young.
- Ali is playing in the street now.
- Now, he plays as a defender in his team.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't make noise. My father ....
   a) sleeps b) is sleeping c) sleep d) has slept
2. Mariam is busy at the moment. She .... her hair.
   a) wash b) washes c) is washing d) has washed
3. I can't go out with you now as I .... my homework.
   a) do b) have done c) am doing d) was doing
4. Look! How fast that lorry ....
   a) go b) went c) goes d) is going
5. My parents .... to Saudi Arabia next week. They have booked the tickets.
   a) going b) will go c) go d) are going
6. Samy .... on the garden but we want him to finish and have lunch with us.
   a) is still working b) still works c) is still worked d) still worked
7. He .... his glasses so he can't watch the match on TV now.
   a) doesn't wear b) didn't wear c) isn't wearing d) won't wear
8. She can't do her shopping at the moment because it .... heavily.
   a) rains b) is raining c) was raining d) is rained
9. Nader .... the report, he won't stop until he finishes.
   a) was writing b) wrote c) writes d) is writing
10. Where .... your brother and his wife staying these days?
    a) will b) do c) are d) were

Extra Points

a) We use the present continuous with the word (always) to express annoyance or something that happens continuously.

– يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر مع كلمة always للتعبير عن الانزعاج أو عن شيء يحدث كثيرًا.

- He is always behaving carelessly.
- She is always asking a lot of silly questions.
- My mother is always helping us with our homework.

b) State verbs with the present continuous with special meanings.

– هناك بعض الأفعال التى لا تستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة، وهى أفعال الشعور والحب والكراهية والرأى والملكية مثل:

believe يعتقد / belong يخص / like يحب / own يملك / want يريد / seem يبدو / mean يقصد / hate يكره / know يعرف / love يحب / need يحتاج / prefer يفضل / understand يفهم , etc.

– ولكن إذا استخدمت فى الاستمرار تكون بمعانٍ أخرى.

- I have a car. (أمتلك)
- I'm having breakfast. (أتناول)
- I think Ali is clever. (أعتقد)
- I'm thinking of buying a car. (أفكر) = considering
- The silk shirt feels soft. (يبدو) (= It has a soft texture نَسيج).
- Salma is feeling (تتحسس) the cat's fur. (= She's touching).

لاحظ الفرق بين المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر:

Present continuous	*Present simple*
Now الآن	**Always** دائمًا
‣ It's raining at the moment. ‣ I'm watching this programme. ‣ Look! This man is taking a photo of you.	‣ It always rains in winter. ‣ I watch television most weekends. ‣ He takes lots of photos. He's a photographer.
Temporary مؤقت	**Permanent** دائم
‣ I'm working at a sports shop for six weeks. ‣ They are living in a small flat these days.	‣ I work at a sports shop. It's permanent. ‣ They live in a very nice flat.

3 The Past Simple Tense الماضى البسيط

Form: التكوين	Subj. + التصريف الثانى للفعل ‣ I/He/They passed the exam.
Negative: النفى	Subj. + didn't + inf. ‣ I/He/They didn't watch the match.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Did + subj. + inf.? ‣ Did the police arrest the criminal? Wh-word + did + subj + inf.? ‣ What did she buy?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + was/were + p.p. ‣ The criminal was arrested last night.

Usage الاستخدام

1) **For an action which began and finished in the past.** يستخدم لحدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى

- We visited a lot of countries last year.

2) **For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.** للأحداث التى حدثت تباعًا واحدًا تلو الآخر فى الماضى (ليس هناك فارق زمنى لكى نستخدم الماضى التام)

- First he paid the driver, then he got out of the taxi.

3) **For past habits which are now finished.** للعادات التى كانت فى الماضى ولم يعد لها وجود الآن.
(We can also use: used to)

- People travelled/used to travel on camels in the past.

4) **For telling stories** لسرد أحداث القصص

- When the thief tried to escape, the police attacked him bravely. In the end, he was arrested and sent to prison for life.

The past simple is used with the following time expressions: مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية

yesterday, last night, week, month, year, Friday, etc, two days, weeks, months ago, then, when, How long ago .....?, in 1900/2000/2012, the other day منذ بضعة أيام, etc.

- He graduated from Assuit University in 1991.
- How long ago did she leave her work?

Used to + inf.

– تعبر used to عن عادة فى الماضى أو أحداث كانت متكررة ولم تعد تحدث الآن ويتبعها المصدر.

- He used to be slim when he was young but now he isn't.
- We didn't use to have mobile phones 20 years ago.

no longer/any longer

– نستخدم no longer وبعدها فعل مضارع أو any longer ومعها مضارع منفى بدلًا من used to

- Osama no longer smokes. = Osama doesn't smoke any longer. = Osama used to smoke.
- When ....? = How long ago ....?

When did he work for this company? = How long ago did he work for this company?

Extra Points

1) Using (for) with past simple.

– يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع for للتعبير عن سيرة شخص ذاتية أو أحداث استمرت لعدد من السنين أو الشهور.

- My father went to the Faculty of Commerce for four years.
- My grandfather lived in Italy for 5 years.

2) With (always – never – often, etc.) to express habits in the past.

– يستخدم مع نفس كلمات المضارع البسيط ليدل على العادة في الماضي.

- When he was a child, he always walked to school.
- I never thought that it would be possible to buy things on the internet.

3) Some confusing verbs when used in the past:

– بعض الأفعال تكون مربكة عند استخدامها في الماضي، ولذلك يجب حفظ تصريفها جيدًا.

1.	fall	يسقط / يقع	fell	fallen
	fell	يوقع / يقطع شجرة	felled	felled
2.	find	يجد	found	found
	found	يؤسس	founded	founded
3.	lie	يستلقي / يضطجع	lay	lain
	lay	تضع البيض / تعد منضدة	laid	laid
4.	wind	يلف عقارب الساعة	wound	wound
	wound	يجرح	wounded	wounded
5.	ring	يتصل / يرن	rang	rung
	ring	يضع دائرة حول	ringed	ringed

4) Object + (be + used to) + inf./for + v-ing = passive

– إذا جاء المفعول به قبل be used to، فيأتي بعدها المصدر وتكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول وفي هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يُستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

- The underground metro is used to carry/for carrying people to their destinations.

5) "Used to" for past habits not for actions that happened for short times.

–نستخدم used to للأحداث التي كانت متكررة في الماضي وليس للأحداث التي حدثت لفترات قصيرة.

- I used to visit my uncle when I was young.
- I visited my uncle twice last week.

ولا يصح أن نقول:

- I ~~used to visit~~ my uncle twice last week.(x)

الأخطاء الشائعة

١- يقع كثير من الطلاب فى خطأ كبير عند استخدام الماضى البسيط؛ إذ إنهم يضعون was/were قبل الفعل، وهذا غير صحيح، إذ إن الماضى البسيط لا يتكون إلا من فعل واحد:

- I ~~was played~~ tennis yesterday. ✗
- I played tennis yesterday ماضٍ بسيط. ✓

ونضع was/were إذا كان فعلًا أساسيًا بمعنى (كان) بدون فعل آخر مثل:
(was/were + اسم / صفة)

- He was ill yesterday. They were happy.

٢- نستخدم الماضى البسيط وليس الماضى المستمر عند الحديث عن العادة فى الماضى.

- When I was on holiday, I went to the beach every day.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last Saturday, we .... our uncle in the countryside.
   a) visited b) visiting c) visit d) have visited
2. We .... a very good time on the beach two days ago.
   a) were having b) had c) have had d) having
3. **A:** When did they .... married? **B:** 15 years ago.
   a) got b) get c) getting d) have got
4. I wasn't hungry so I .... anything.
   a) was eating b) ate c) didn't eat d) haven't eaten
5. .... you speak to Mr Sayed yesterday? "Yes, I phoned him."
   a) Did b) Have c) Were d) Had
6. I .... a lot of sweets when I was young.
   a) eat b) am used to eating c) was eating d) ate
7. Where .... you all day yesterday? I couldn't get hold of you.
   a) did b) have c) were d) had
8. I used to .... much coffee, but now I don't.
   a) drinking b) drank c) drink d) be drunk
9. He .... to the library three times last week.
   a) went b) used to go c) used to going d) was going
10. What did Osama .... you on your last birthday?
    a) given b) giving c) gave d) give

لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The famous footballer is coming to visit our village, and I .... he's very rich.
a) hearing b) hear c) am hearing d) will hear

2 The bus was terribly slow so it .... us four hours to get home.
a) takes b) took c) is taking d) was taking

3 We usually go abroad every year, but this year we .... at home.
a) stay b) were staying c) stays d) are staying

4 The museum .... at 8 a.m. and closes at 4 p.m. every day.
a) open b) is opening c) will open d) opens

5 They .... in solving the problem yesterday.
a) succeed b) are succeeding c) succeeded d) had succeeded

6 A: 'Can I speak to Fahmy, please?'
B: 'He .... a shower. Can I take a message?'
a) has b) is having c) had d) will have

7 They're hungry. They .... something to eat.
a) want b) wants c) are wanting d) were wanting

8 He got in the car, ... the engine and drove off.
a) started b) was starting c) starts d) will start

9 A: Where's Nada? B: She .... a tennis match.
a) played b) is playing c) has played d) plays

10 When Mona .... from England tomorrow, I'll visit her.
a) come b) came c) had come d) comes

11 The plane to London .... at 8.45 next Friday.
a) leave b) is leaving c) will leave d) leaves

12 Everything is arranged for my travel next Saturday. It means I .... next Saturday.
a) travel b) will travel c) am travelling d) was travelling

13 We .... football in the streets. We play in the club.
a) play never b) never play c) never played d) already play

14 My father often .... me to the zoo when I was young.
a) took b) takes c) had taken d) was taking

15 Do you think that trees .... more quickly in summer than in winter?
a) are growing b) are grown c) grow d) grew

16 The sun .... in the west.
a) rises b) doesn't rises c) never rises d) never rise

17 I can't see you now. I .... for the test.
a) revise b) am revising c) was revising d) revised

18 I .... him when we were both working in Mansoura.
a) knew b) know c) have known d) had known

19 I .... swimming three times a week.
a) was going b) am going c) going d) go

20 Maya .... tennis at the moment. She is practising for a competition.
a) plays b) is playing c) will play d) has played

21 Ali always .... to work when he was young.
a) walked b) walks c) is walking d) was walking

22 When I was eight, I .... a programme about a famous Egyptian doctor on television.
a) was seeing b) have seen c) am seeing d) saw

23 We .... for my brother's birthday party. Do you want to help?
a) prepared b) prepare c) have prepared d) are preparing

24 After my father .... his work, he will take us to the club.
a) finish b) had finished c) finishes d) is finishing

25 I started the job two years ago. During that time, I .... some very important people.
a) am meeting b) met c) meeting d) meet

26 Now, I .... for a well-known Egyptian company that writes computer programs.
a) work b) worked c) working d) works

27 I bought my new camera last week. I .... a photo of you now.
a) take b) took c) am taking d) had taken

28 I was so tired last night that I .... asleep at half past eight.
a) fall b) am falling c) fallen d) fell

29 At the moment, we .... a history project at school. It is very interesting.
a) do b) did c) are doing d) doing

30 It .... rain in Egypt. It is usually hot and sunny.
a) is often b) doesn't often c) isn't often d) won't often

31 We .... air conditioning in many of our buildings because of our hot weather.
a) need b) are needing c) had needed d) needs

32 My grandmother is living in Alexandria at the moment. She .... there two months ago.
a) was moving b) moved c) is moving d) moves

33 My company had an important meeting last month. A trade delegation .... from their office in Japan.
a) was coming b) are coming c) came d) comes

34 I .... Japanese food for the first time last week, but I prefer Chinese food.
a) am eating b) eat c) was eating d) ate

35 People .... to work when they are older for many reasons.
a) continued b) continue c) continuing d) have continued

36 The university .... for a qualified doctor at the moment.
a) is advertising b) advertised c) advertises d) advertise

37 Why don't you wait for Ali in the living room? He .... a shower.
a) was having b) had c) has d) is having

38 What does the word "economics" ....?
a) is meaning b) meant c) mean d) means

39 Ask Ahmed to get me a packet of tea when he .... by the grocer's.
a) pass b) passed c) passes d) was passing

40 Before she .... the house, she will do the shopping.
a) cleans b) will clean c) is cleaning d) cleaned

41 My grandfather .... to a primary school for 6 years.
a) is going b) was going c) went d) has gone

42 I'll be with you in a minute. I .... something in the living room.
a) am just finishing b) finished c) had finished d) will finish

43 It seems a big house. How many people .... in it?
a) do live b) living c) live d) do they live

44 A: Leila is learning to drive at the moment.
B: I know. She .... me the other week.
a) told b) will tell c) tells d) telling

45 We are discussing the new project and .... a good time as well.
a) having b) had c) have d) being having

46 Wood of the trees from forests .... paper.
a) used to make b) is used to make c) is used to making d) uses to make

47 He .... a car at the moment, so he has to take a taxi.
a) didn't have b) doesn't has c) doesn't have d) isn't having

48 It was a lovely day, so we .... to go for a walk.
a) have decided b) decided c) had decided d) will decide

49 The woman who .... this house died 30 years ago.
a) is owning b) own c) was owning d) owned

50 Most people .... in the existence of magic.
a) don't believe b) aren't believing
c) weren't believing d) doesn't believe

2 Fill in the space:

1 Hazem is 14 years old and he ....(a)............. in Port Said. He ....(b)............. to school every day by bus. Hazem's father works in a bank. In his free time, Hazem ....(c)............. football with his friends. He ....(d)............. to be a football player when he grows up. His family ....(e)............. encourages and advises him to do better to achieve ....(f)............. ambitions.

2 My friends and I ....(a)............. discussing how to spend the next weekend. Some of us suggest ....(b)............. some historic places. Others ....(c)............. to go to the countryside and ....(d)............. a nice time there. I have told them that my uncle ....(e)............. a nice farm in Port Said and he ....(f)............. be happy if we go to spend sometime there. We haven't decided yet, but we hope to have a good weekend.

3 Today in class we read a story by Charles Dickens. I really ....(a)............. it. It was about a boy who ....(b)............. born in a workhouse. The boy had a very hard life and ....(c)............. to run away to London. There, he ....(d)............. very bad people who ....(e)............. to make him a thief and also met good people who loved him. In the end, all the bad people were ....(f)............. and the good people were rewarded.

4 There are seven continents in the world. Asia is ....(a)............. largest one and Australia is the smallest. Africa has the most countries. It ....(b)............. 53 countries. Europe is ....(c)............. small continent with 25 countries. There are 22 countries in North America ....(d)............. 13 countries in South America. Australia is a continent, a country and an island. Although, there ....(e)............. ice in some continents, others suffer ....(f)............. very high temperatures.

5 Students are always worried ....(a)............. exams. Before ....(b)............. each exam, they try to study hard so that ....(c)............. can do well in them. If they score high marks, they forget all ....(d)............. efforts made throughout the year. On ....(e)............. their ambitions, they will ....(f)............. a strong will to be good citizens.

6 When you catch a cold, you get tired of sneezing and blowing your nose ....(a)............. the time. There is no cure ....(b)............. the common cold. The medicine that you take makes you feel ....(c)............., but it cannot get rid of ....(d)............. cold virus. The best thing is to take plenty of rest. It ....(e)............. advised to follow the doctor's advice to ....(f)............. well and healthy.

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He spends his free time .... in the garden.
a) to digging b) dug c) to dig d) digging

2 He cut the bread .... a knife.
a) by b) from c) with d) of

3 I saw someone .... a stone at the window and run away.
a) is throwing b) threw c) to throw d) throw

4 .... you ride a bike when you were six years old?
a) Could b) Can c) Might d) May

5 He prefers watching TV .... listening to the radio.
a) than b) to c) rather d) from

6 .... you mind turning the volume down a little, please?
a) Could b) Should c) Would d) Must

7 Dina .... have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.
a) must b) can't c) needn't d) mustn't

8 Do you object .... to Hurghada? Where else can we go?
a) be taken b) being taken c) to be taken d) to being taken

9 I'm eager to know your .... routine.
a) week b) weeks c) week's d) weekly

10 He was offered the job because he was .... candidate.
a) the best b) better c) best d) good

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

1 Asking for and giving opinion السؤال عن وإعطاء الرأى

Asking for Opinion	*Giving Opinion*
• What's your opinion about/of ......?	• I think/believe ...... because ......
• What do you think of/about ......?	• In my opinion/view ...... as ......
• Do you like ......?	• If you ask me ...... so that ......

Examples:

- I think/believe English is important because it helps us to get a better job.
- In my opinion/view, reading is useful as it gives us a lot of information.
- If you ask me, students should study hard so that they can pass their exams.

2 Asking for and giving reason السؤال عن وإعطاء السبب

Asking for reason	*Giving reason*
• What do you like about working as ....?	• The reason I like/enjoy ...... is that ...... السبب فى حبى لـ ...... هو ......
• Why do you like your job?	• The best thing about ...... is ...... أفضل شىء فى...... هو ......
• Why do you like (English/science/ history, etc.)?	• I enjoy/love + (v-ing) because ...... أستمتع بـ/ أحب ......لأن ......
• What is the main reason for ....?	• The main reason is ...... السبب الرئيسى هو أن ......

Examples:

- The reason I like my job is that I meet all kinds of people.
- The best thing about working here is the friendly people.
- I enjoy/love working here because every day is different.
- The main reason is that I'm proud to be helping to make Egypt a better place.

Writing: Completing an application form

- **To complete an application form you should write the basic information needed in the form.**
- **You also should answer the questions with sentences like:**

  I would like to do this job because ....

  I am very interested in ....

  I think I would be good at this job because ....

  I have some experience in ....
- **Tips for writing an application form:**
  1. Revise your data accurately after writing it.
  2. Rearrange your qualifications and experience from past to present.
  3. Make sure there aren't spelling mistakes in your writing.

Model Application Form

25 El-Ahram Street, Roxy

Application Form

(A) Personal details

Surname	: El-masry
First name	: Ramy
Home address	: 20, Nahda St. Cairo
Telephone number	: 020 3256541 ...
Nationality	: Egyptian
Marital status	: Single
Date of birth	: 6/8/1995
Education	: Bachelor of Commerce
Qualifications	: Master degree in Accounting

(B) Why would you like to do this job? **(Write 50 words)**

I would like to do this job because it is what I have always liked to do since I was at school. I like working with numbers and financial record. ....

(C) What would make you good at the job? **(Write 50 words)**

I think I will be fit for this job. I have Bachelor degree in Accounting and I am doing postgraduate studies, so it is suitable for me to work part-time. I also have 2 years experience and training at a bank. ....

Skills Exercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. What job you dream of and your reasons for choosing it.
2. How the internet has changed the world of work nowadays.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Most countries face problems because of the lack of job opportunities for young people. Governments try hard to solve the unemployment problem.
2. Retirement age can be considered a time of rest. However, many old people want to continue work for social and financial reasons.
3. Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation depends on charity to carry out its mission. That's why we all should donate money for it.
4. Tourism is the second most important source of hard currency in Egypt. It also adds much to our national income.

5. Mass media has become one of the main instruments of political change. So, it is widely used in all political campaigns.
6. Cairo Book Fair is one of the most important cultural events in the Arab World. It has many cultural activities such as conferences and seminars.

B) Translate into English:

١- لقد تقدمت جراحة زراعة القلب فى مصر كثيرًا خلال الأعوام القليلة الماضية.
٢- التقدم الطبى أهم إنجازات الإنسان التى أدت إلى زيادة سعادته ورفاهيته.
٣- علينا أن نرعى كبار السن حتى يشعروا بالراحة بعد عملهم الشاق من أجلنا.
٤- إن الموسيقى من أهم الوسائل التى تساعد على تحضر الناس؛ لذا أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من المقرر الدراسى.
٥- نفخر جميعًا بعلمائنا المتميزين أمثال أحمد زويل وفاروق الباز الذين قاموا بإنجازات علمية كبيرة.
٦- تلعب الرياضة دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال؛ لذا أصبحت جزءًا من المنهج الدراسى.

Enrich your Vocabulary

campaign	حملة	mission	مهمة / رسالة
cultural	ثقافى	national income	الدخل القومى
currency	عملة	seminar	ندوة
donate	يتبرع	social	اجتماعى
financial	مالى	source	مصدر
job opportunities	فرص العمل	unemployment	البطالة
lack	نقص	welfare	رفاهية
mass media	وسائل الإعلام		

Test 1 Based on Unit 1

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctors are trying to keep him alive until a liver can be found for ....
   a) transport b) transmit c) transplant d) transform
2. Because she is wearing a new dress, Rose .... very pretty today.
   a) looks b) is looking c) look d) has looked
3. One of my friends works for a .... that gives poor people money and food for their living.
   a) newspaper b) charity c) shop d) station
4. When Ahmed was young, he always .... to be a pilot.
   a) wanting b) wants c) wanted d) was wanting

5 They left the house an hour ....
a) latter b) last c) before d) ago

6 A trade .... from China is visiting Egypt to discuss increasing their exports to us.
a) graduation b) education c) dedication d) delegation

7 He was .... by the number of people who attended the party.
a) surprising b) surprised c) surprisingly d) surprise

8 Two hours .... a long time to wait.
a) isn't b) hasn't c) aren't d) haven't

9 Nahid lives by .... in a small apartment close to the police station.
a) her b) hers c) herself d) her own

10 Modern life is so complicated, so people have to .... to any new situations.
a) admit b) enroll c) adopt d) adapt

11 Do you believe that you can make a .... to other people's lives?
a) differ b) different c) difference d) differentiate

12 The interviewer asked to see my .... before meeting me.
a) quality b) qualities c) qualifies d) qualifications

13 The word "worsen" is the opposite of the word ....
a) improve b) arrange c) date d) achieve

14 The famous player worked in television after .... from baseball.
a) retraining b) resigning c) repeating d) retiring

15 The heavy rain has been causing serious problems .... the drivers on highways.
a) of b) with c) in d) for

16 At our hotel, we give all of our customers the royal ....
a) medicine b) crown c) treatment d) affection

17 **Fill in the space:**

My grandfather ....(a)............ died last month always ....(b)............ me useful advice. The last time I visited him, he ....(c)............ me that I shouldn't waste my time. He added that only hard-working people succeed ....(d)............ their lives. I always tried to follow ....(e)............ advice so I have become in a good position in society. I ....(f)............ forget him and his advice.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: ★

Interests are important to think about. But it is most important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

★ لترجمة الكلمات الصعبة بقطع الفهم يرجى الرجوع إلى القاموس بنهاية الكتاب.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work that way. Others can't stand it. Suzan loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, Fatma can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes.

Pressure even makes her sick. She won't be able to stay very long in a pressure cause job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 According to the writer, our choice of jobs is influenced by ....
a) our education
b) work values
c) personality
d) salaries

19 According to the passage, working under pressure means ....
a) meeting a deadline
b) finishing at any time
c) making mistakes
d) enjoying our job

20 The synonym of "conflict" is ....
a) balance
b) agreement
c) harmony
d) struggle

21 In most time, pressure leads to ....
a) relaxation
b) satisfaction
c) freedom
d) sickness

B) Answer the following questions:

22 What happens to people who don't like their jobs?

23 Explain how working under pressure is something bad.

24 Do you like working under pressure or not? Why?

25 Translate into English:

– تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا كبيرًا فى تشكيل الرأى العام ومحاولة ترسيخ قيم المجتمع فى نفوس المواطنين.

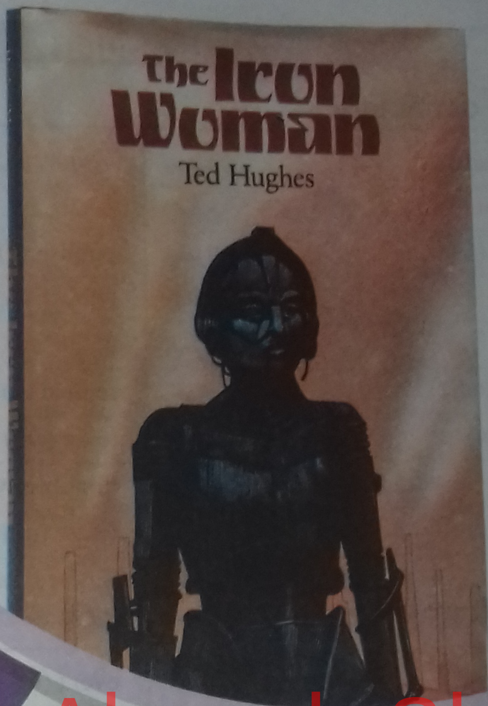
26 Translate into Arabic:

The Aswan Heart Centre is a centre of excellence to combat heart disease in Egypt. It also helps enhance medical research.

27 Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:

1. Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us.
2. The role of charitable organisations in helping society.

Unit 2



Ted Hughes: *The Iron Woman*

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist and for specific information
Grammar	: Relative clauses and *whose*
Reading	: Reading for detailed information
Critical thinking	: Understanding the consequences of pollution
Functions	: Negotiating
Writing	: A formal email negotiating a problem

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amusing (adj)	مسلٍ
amusement (n)	تسلية
childhood (n)	طفولة
death (n)	وفاة / موت
die (v) (d)	يموت
enormous (adj)	ضخم
forever (adv)	للأبد
laureate (n)	حائز على جائزة / شاعر بلاط الملكة
marsh (n)	مستنقع
poet (n)	شاعر / شاعرة
poem (n)	قصيدة
poetry (n)	شعر
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتاب / جريدة)
publication (n)	نشر
publisher (n)	ناشر
remain (v) (ed)	يظل / يبقى
toxic (adj)	سام
turn into (v) (ed)	يتحول / يحول إلى
waste (n) (v) (d)	نفاية / يسرف
wasteful (adj)	مُسرف / مُبذِّر

Vocabulary On Listening

appear (v) (ed)	يظهر
author (n)	مؤلف / كاتب
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل
celebration (n)	احتفال
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
come out (v)	يظهر / يصدر (كتاب)
common (adj)	شائع / معروف
describe (v) (d)	يصف
description (n)	وصف
dragon (n)	تنين (مخلوق أسطورى)
event (n)	حدث
eventful (adj)	مليء بالأحداث
famous (adj)	مشهور
folks (n)	قوم / ناس / أهل
gardener (n)	بستانى / جناينى
later (adv)	فيما بعد
magazine (n)	مجلة
play (n)	مسرحية
several (adj)	عديد
special (adj)	خاص
the countryside (n)	الريف
underline (v) (d)	يضع خطًّا تحت

Vocabulary On Reading

area (n)	منطقة / مساحة
bright (adj)	لامع / مضيء
cause (v) (d) (n)	يسبب / سبب
change (v) (d) (n)	يغير / يتغير / تغيير
climb (v) (ed)	يتسلق / يصعد
damage (n) (v) (d)	تلف / يتلف
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
destruction (n)	دمار / تدمير
destructive (adj)	مُدمِّر
dream (v) (ed) (n)	يحلم / حلم
experience (n)	خبرة / تجربة حياة
frightened (adj)	مرعوب
iron (n) (adj)	حديد / حديدى
kill (v) (ed)	يقتل
mud (n)	طين
planet (n)	كوكب
poison (v) (ed) (n)	يسمم / سم
poisonous (adj)	سام
promise (v) (d)	يَعِدُ
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
protection (n)	حماية / وقاية
protective (adj)	واقٍ / وقائى
save (v) (d)	ينقذ
terrified (adj)	مذعور
throw (v) threw - thrown	يلقى
walk off (v) (ed)	يبتعد / يمشى بعيدًا

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

chemical (adj) (n)	كيماوى / مادة كيماوية
environment (n)	البيئة
health (n)	الصحة
location (n)	موقع
manager (n)	مدير
massive (adj)	ضخم / شاسع
memory (n)	ذاكرة / ذكرى
mostly (adv)	على الأغلب
naughty (adj)	مشاغب / شقى
nearby (adj)	قريب
negotiate (v) (d)	يتفاوض
negotiation (n)	تفاوض
owner (n)	مالك
peaceful (adj)	هادئ / مسالم
plan (n) (v) (ned)	خطة / يخطط
pollution (n)	التلوث

reduce (v) (d)	يخفض / يقلل	traffic (n)	المرور
space (n)	مساحة / فراغ	transport (n)	النقل
take away (v)	يبعد	unkind (adj)	غير عطوف
taste (n) (v)	مذاق / يتذوق	volcanoes (n)	براكين
tobacco (n)	تبغ	worker (n)	عامل

Focus on Vocabulary

amusing	مسلٍ	describes something that is funny or entertaining
childhood	طفولة	the time in your life when you are a child
death	وفاة / موت	the end of life
enormous	ضخم	very big
forever	للأبد	for all future time
marsh	مستنقع	an area of soft wet land
Poet Laureate	شاعر البلاط	a poet who is asked to write poems for important events by the Queen of Britain
publish	ينشر	put writing online or print something written in a book
remain	يبقى / يظل	continue in the same way
toxic	سام	poisonous
turn into	يحول إلى	to make something change and become completely different
waste	نفاية	what is left after you have used something

Expressions & Idioms

around the country	حول البلد	give someone a taste of their own medicine	يجعل شخص يتذوق ما يفعله
ask for her help	يطلب المساعدة	have a plan	لديه خطة
by the river	بجوار النهر	made into a film	محول إلى فيلم
damage people's health	يضر بصحة الناس	make sure	يتأكد

Phrases & Prepositions

agree with	يتفق مع	learn about	يعرف عن
bad for	سيئ لـ	look forward to + ing	يتطلع إلى
find out	يكتشف	popular with	محبوب لدى
give to	يعطي لـ	think of	يفكر في
interested in	مهتم بـ	throw into	يقذف في

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
amusing	مُسلٍّ / مضحك	delightful/entertaining	boring	ممل
celebrate	يحتفل	honour	denounce	يندد / ينتقد
common	شائع / معروف	prevailing/familiar	rare/unusual	نادر / غير معتاد
destroy	يدمر	damage	construct	يشيد / يبني
forever	للأبد	permanently /eternally	ending/temporary	منتهٍ / مؤقت
nearby	قريب	close	far	بعيد
poison	يسمم	corrupt/harm	purify	ينقي

protect يحمي / يحافظ على	preserve/save	endanger/hurt يعرض للخطر / يضر
reduce يقلل	decrease	increase يزيد
remain يظل / يبقى	continue	cease يتوقف

Notes on Vocabulary

event — incident — accident

event
١- حدث مهم
٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى / مؤتمر سياسي)

- One of the most important events in our history is 6th October Victory.
- The charity raises money by organising concert events.

incident
١- حدث (عارض / غير معتاد)
٢- حدث (فى فيلم / قصة / مسرحية)

- The fire shooting is one of the incidents of the day.
- He thought the film was boring without many incidents.

accident
حادث

- Over 70,000 people are seriously injured every year in road accidents.

cause — reason — reason why

cause
١- سَبَب (يتبعها حرف الجر of)
٢- يسبب

- The major cause of these accidents is the high speed of drivers.
- What caused you to change your mind?
- The fire caused a serious damage to the factory.

reason
١- سبب / تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر for)
٢- يفكر / يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير

- People have different reasons for wanting to change jobs.
- We reasoned that they would not leave before dark.

reason why + جملة
- سبب لـ

- I don't know the reason why he was absent.

experience **experiment**

experience

١ – خبرة (اسم غير معدود)

٢ – تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)

- He had no previous experience for the job he applied for.
- The two children in this story have suffered a lot from difficult experiences in their life.

experiment – تجربة (علمية/ معملية)

- Scientists usually do experiments on animals for new medicines.

poisonous **poisoned**

poisonous سام (يحتوى على/ ينتج السم)

- Some plants are considered poisonous to humans and animals.

poisoned مسموم (تم وضع السم به/ له)

- The Iron Woman made the workers feel the pain in the poisoned river.
- The police believe that the man was killed by a poisoned meal.

stop

يتبع الفعل (stop) صيغٌ مختلفة يعطى كلٌّ منها معنى مختلفًا:

stop + v-ing يتوقف عن

- My brother stopped smoking two months ago.

stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكى

- On my way home, I stopped to get a cool drink.

stop + object + (from) v-ing يوقف/ يمنع من فعل شيء (بحرف جر و بدون حرف جر)

- The Iron Woman wanted to stop the workers (from) polluting the river.

memory **souvenir**

memory ذاكرة/ ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)

- My sister has a terrible memory for names.
- He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El Sheikh.

souvenir تذكار (شيء مادى يذكر برحلة/ حدث)

- I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.

publish | **come out** | **spread**

يظهر / يَصدُر (كتابًا) (لا تبنى للمجهول)

ينشر (ومن الممكن أن تبنى للمجهول)

publish
- The novel was published last year.

come out
- The novel came out last year.

spread

١- ينتشر / يمتد

٢- ينشر (خبرًا / إشاعة / مرضًا)

- Fire quickly spread through the building.
- The disease spread rapidly amongst the poor.
- How dare you spread such evil lies!

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Hosting the African Cup of Nations was the most important sporting .... in Egypt in 2019.
a) event b) accident c) operation d) process

2 Do you have any .... of working with kids?
a) experiment b) expert c) export d) experience

3 Carbon monoxide is a colourless, odourless, ... gas.
a) poisoned b) poisonous c) poison d) posting

4 The band's new album .... last week and it was very successful.
a) published b) spread c) came out d) printed

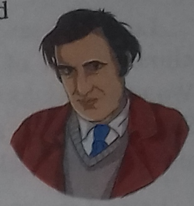
5 Weakness or loss of .... is a natural part of old age.
a) memory b) souvenir c) memorial d) remembrance

6 The security staff put barriers up to stop people .... through.
a) get b) getting c) to get d) got

7 Mr. John had an .... and spilled water all over his important documents.
a) event b) incident c) accident d) mistake

8 Some diseases can .... by different insects such as flies and mosquitoes.
a) spread b) publish c) come out d) print

Listening Text



Voice: Ted Hughes is a British writer. A lot of people think that Ted Hughes was the best English poet[1] of the twentieth century. Not many people know that he also wrote wonderful books for children. The most famous of these is *The Iron Man*, which was written in 1968 and was later made into a film. *The Iron Woman* was written many years later, in 1993. In The Iron Woman, the Iron Man appears again and helps the Iron Woman to save the earth from the dangers of pollution.

Ted Hughes was born in 1930 in Yorkshire, which is in the north of England. During his childhood[2], he spent a lot of time in the countryside and was interested in animals and birds. He also loved writing. He started writing poems[3] when he was at school.

After university, Hughes had a lot of different jobs. He worked as a gardener, a teacher and in a zoo, where he learned a lot about animals. He started to work for a magazine. Hughes met his wife, who also worked at the magazine, at this time. His wife, whose name was Sylvia Plath, was a famous American poet.

It was after their first child, Frieda, was born that Hughes's first book of poems for children was published[4]. It came out in 1961 and was called *Meet My Folks*. The poems that were in the book describe each member of the family in an amusing[5] way.

Hughes enjoyed reading his poems to his children. One of them is a story about a dragon[6] that wants to visit the Queen of England! Hughes also wrote several plays for children, and some of them are now taught in English schools.

The books which people liked most were often about nature[7]. Ted Hughes was also Britain's Poet Laureate[8] from 1984 until his death[9] in 1998. This was a time when he wrote special poems to celebrate[10] important national events for the Queen.

(1) شاعر
(2) طفولة
(3) قصائد
(4) ينشر
(5) مسلٍ
(6) تنين
(7) الطبيعة
(8) شاعر البلاط
(9) وفاة
(10) يحتفل

Reading Text

THE IRON WOMAN



Lucy first saw the Iron Woman as she was climbing out of a dirty marsh[1]. The Iron Woman was enormous[2], with bright red eyes. She was as big as Lucy's house. Lucy was terrified and quickly ran home.

Later, Lucy woke up from a dream and found that the Iron Woman had come to ask for her help. She wanted Lucy to clean the mud[3] from her. Lucy did this. Then the Iron Woman told Lucy why she had come. She wanted to destroy[4] the factory by the river.

She thought that if she killed all the workers in the factory, she would save the planet. The workers were throwing toxic waste[5] into the river. This was killing all the fish in the water. Lucy asked her not to destroy the factory, where Lucy's father worked, but the Iron Woman said that she must. She walked off into the night.

Lucy remembered reading about the Iron Man in a newspaper, and a boy called Hogarth who was his friend. She wrote to Hogarth and asked him to bring the Iron Man. Perhaps together they would be able to protect the factory and also stop it polluting[6] the river.

The next day, Lucy met Hogarth and the Iron Man next to the factory. At that moment, the Iron Woman arrived. She was ready to destroy the factory. Hogarth stopped the Iron Woman. He said that the Iron Man had a plan.

The Iron Man gave the Iron Woman special powers[7] so that she was able to turn the factory workers into fish! They all had to live in the river that they had poisoned[8]! The workers felt the pain[9] that the fish felt in this poisoned river, and suddenly understood the terrible damage they had caused.

The Iron Woman turned them back into people after they promised never to pollute the earth again. However, the men were so frightened by this experience, that all of them now had white hair. The river became clean once again, but the men's hair didn't change and remained[10] white forever[11].

(1) مستنقع
(2) ضخم
(3) الطين
(4) يدمر
(5) نفايات سامة
(6) يلوث
(7) قوى
(8) يسمم
(9) ألم
(10) يبقى/ يظل
(11) للأبد

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 Ted Hughes was born in 1930 in Yorkshire, which is in the north of England.
- استخدم ضمير الوصل which وليس where بعد المكان؛ لأن الجملة بعد ضمير الوصل وصف للمكان ولا تعبر عن شيء حدث أو يحدث فى المكان.

2 His wife, whose name was Sylvia Plath, was a famous American poet.
- استخدم ضمير الوصل whose التى تعبر عن الملكية؛ لأن ما بعدها يخص ما قبلها.

3 Hughes enjoyed reading his poems to his children.
- يتبع الفعل enjoy صيغة (verb + ing) أو اسم دائمًا.

4 He started writing poems when he was at school.
He started to work for a magazine.
- يتبع الفعل start صيغة (verb + ing) أو (to + infinitive) بدون تغيير فى المعنى.

5 Lucy remembered reading about the Iron Man ....
- يتبـع الفعـل remember صيغة (verb + ing) إذا كان الفعل حدث قبل التذكـر، فالمعنى هنا أنها تذكرت أنها قرأت عن الرجل الحديدى.
أما إذا تبعه (to + infinitive) فإن الجملة تعنى أن التذكر يسبق الفعل.
He remembered to lock the door before he left.

6 The Iron Man gave the Iron Woman special powers so that she was able to turn the factory workers into fish.
- so that أداة ربط بمعنى (لكى) ويتبعها جملة كاملة، ولاحظ عدم وجوب استخدام (can - could) كما هو شائع، بل يمكن استخدام صيغ أخرى.

7 Then the Iron Woman told Lucy why she had come.
- تسـتخدم why هنا كأداة ربط فى جملة غير مباشـرة لذلك تبعتها صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) وليس فعلًا مساعدًا كأى سؤال، ولاحظ أيضًا استخدام الماضى التام (had come) للتعبير عن الحدث الأقدم.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandmother has a book full of .... nice stories which she reads to us.
a) amusing b) boring c) dull d) adventurous

2 A .... is an area of soft wet land that is usually not clean.
a) mass b) marsh c) maze d) marlin

3 We should stop factories and people from throwing their harmful .... into rivers.
a) waist b) wave c) weight d) waste

4 .... is the time in your life when you are a child.
a) Brotherhood b) Fatherhood c) Childhood d) Adulthood
الاخوة الابوة البلوغ

5 The doctor advised her to .... in bed for a week after the surgery.
a) remain b) remind c) last d) stop

6 Many people think that Ted Hughes was one of the best English .... of the twentieth century.
a) scientists b) journalists c) poets d) farmers

7 Ted Hughes's first book of poems for children was .... in 1961.
a) published b) spread c) come out d) sprayed

8 Don't touch the .... chemicals. Some of them are dangerous and can make you very ill.
a) fresh b) waste c) amusing d) toxic

9 Man's landing on the moon was a great .... in human history.
a) accident b) incident c) event d) celebration

10 My journey in the forest is an .... that I will never forget.
a) experiment b) experience c) export d) expert

11 Valentine's Day is .... in February in most European countries.
a) cooperated b) located c) celebrated d) predicted

12 A Poet .... is a poet chosen by the king to write poems for events.
a) Laureate b) Learner c) Writer d) Governor

13 Doctors say that exercise can .... you against heart disease.
a) endanger b) promise c) predict d) protect

14 Harry Potter novels became famous after they were .... into films.
a) performed b) done c) made d) changed

15 Waste from the factories is .... the fish and other sea animals.
a) feeding b) poisoning c) benefitting d) preventing

16 I've always wanted to live in the .... to enjoy the fresh air and the beautiful views.
a) continent b) countryside c) slums d) suburbs

17 I like that house but I don't imagine I'll live there ....
a) ever b) forever c) shortly d) never

18 The factory was closed because it had been throwing chemicals .... the sea.
a) by b) on c) for d) into

19 The earthquake .... many houses in the city centre.
a) kept b) destroyed c) protected d) prevented

20 My grandfather has a very weak .... because he is 80 years old.
a) memory b) monument c) souvenir d) memorial

21 The old factory was .... into a shopping centre.
a) burned b) mended c) come d) turned

22 You must have at least five years' .... to get the job.
a) condition b) experiment c) licence d) experience

23 The expression "Give someone a taste of their own ...." means to do the same harmful or unpleasant thing that one has done to you or others.
a) drink b) food c) medicine d) toxin

24 The government should punish any factory that throws .... waste in the river.
a) chemical b) useful c) plentiful d) valuable

25 Ted Hughes wrote .... poems to celebrate important national events.
a) private b) own c) ownership d) special

26 There are a lot of these birds in our garden. They are very ....
a) comfortable b) confused c) common d) complete

27 You must find a surgeon, it's a matter of life or ....
a) death b) imprisonment c) theft d) security

28 Charles Dickens is one of the most famous .... of the English novel.
a) authors b) playwrights c) sergeants d) poets

29 The writer's fans are always waiting for his new book to come ....
a) in b) out c) of d) about

30 My grandfather complains that the new .... doesn't look after the flowers well.
a) engineer b) worker c) gardener d) carpenter

31 The concert is an annual .... held by a charity to raise money.
a) event b) incident c) accident d) custom

32 I have read an article about the .... of the First World War.
a) wishes b) hopes c) reasons d) causes

33 People in Ancient Egypt used to live in houses made of ....
a) iron b) concrete c) mud d) cement

34 Pollution is a problem that threatens our life on the ....
a) planet b) plant c) ground d) floor

35 The Pyramids are one of the most popular tourist places .... tourists in Egypt.
a) in b) at c) for d) with

36 It was hard to find a suitable .... for the desert scenes in the film.
a) scene b) view c) sight d) location

37 The new bridge should .... travelling time from 50 minutes to 15 minutes.
a) expand b) reduce c) increase d) develop

38 I asked the secretary to meet the .... of the company.
a) boss b) worker c) manager d) officer

39 Green tea is .... grown in China or Japan.
a) mostly b) briefly c) quickly d) heavily

40 The police officer asked the woman to .... the man who grabbed her bag.
a) ascribe b) prescribe c) scribe d) describe

41 The village people discovered that the water of the well was .... by enemy soldiers.
a) applauded b) diluted c) populated d) polluted

42 Using cars less can help us to reduce air .... especially in big cities.
a) pollution b) employment c) population d) evolution

43 I .... the kids I'd take them to the cinema at the weekend.
a) prevented b) promised c) hoped d) protected

44 Scientists are trying hard to save the earth from the .... of pollution.
a) safety b) happiness c) good d) dangers

45 Improving public .... can help solve the problem of pollution.
a) transport b) transplant c) transmit d) transfusion

46 Ahmed was given a small part in the school .... which will be performed on the school theatre.
a) fair b) song c) play d) film

47 All world governments refuse to .... with terrorists or criminals.
a) fight b) negotiate c) dispute d) settle

48 The United Nations insists on reaching .... solutions to all world conflicts.
a) violent b) vicious c) peaceful d) disagreeable

49 His colleagues became worried when he did not .... at work, since he was always punctual.
a) vanish b) resign c) retire d) appear

50 Luxor and Aswan are very popular places .... tourists in Egypt.
a) for b) on c) with d) at

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The word "prevailing " is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) strange b) peaceful c) rare d) common

2 Sales of the products at present low prices would be a .... of the company's investment.
a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit

3 The climber fell while climbing in the mountains, and only narrowly .... death.
a) caused b) escaped c) met d) sentenced

4 I know you're sorry now, but the fact .... that you hit your sister.
a) remains b) stays c) waits d) ceases

5 There's nothing we can do about it now, we'll just have to put it down to ....
a) experience b) experiment c) past d) safety

6 My sister was very happy because her wedding photos have .... really well.
a) developed b) published c) come out d) come off

7 If that job application doesn't work out, I've got a couple more .... in the fire.
a) works b) careers c) steels d) irons

8 The word "endanger" is an antonym for the word ....
a) prevent b) protect c) prohibit d) promise

9 This film .... you back to the New York of the 1950s.
a) transmits b) transports c) transplants d) deduces

10 Within the .... of three weeks, I felt much better after the operation.
a) area b) decade c) space d) length

Grammar

Relative clauses and whose جمل الوصل

– هى الجمل التى تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها، وضمائر الوصل هى:

who/that	whom	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

– تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.
– يأتى ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

1 اسم عاقل + who/that الذى / التى / الذين + verb

– تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدها فعل.

- Mr Said is very rich. He owns this enormous house.
- Mr Said, who ~~(He)~~ owns this enormous house, is very rich. (بعدها فعل فهى فى محل فاعل)
- The footballer has been banned from playing again. He took drugs.
- The footballer who/that ~~(He)~~ took drugs has been banned from playing again.

2 اسم عاقل + who/whom/that الذين / التى / الذى + subject

–تحل (who /whom /that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدها فاعل.

- The woman was happy. We gave ~~her~~ the money.
- The woman who/whom/that we gave the money was happy.
- The people were very friendly. We met ~~them~~ at the party
- The people who/whom/that we met at the party were very friendly.

(بعدها فاعل فهى فى محل مفعول)

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police caught the boy .... stole his friend's mobile phone.
   a) whose b) which c) whom d) who
2. He was the actor .... was killed in a car crash.
   a) whose b) who c) whom d) where
3. The person .... the police were questioning has been released now.
   a) whose b) which c) when d) whom
4. I know the man .... you were talking to.
   a) which b) where c) who d) whose
5. I thought I recognised the assistant .... had sold me the suit.
   a) whom b) that c) where d) whose
6. The man .... killed his wife has gone to prison.
   a) whose b) who c) whom d) which
7. I'm not one of those people .... deceive others.
   a) whom b) whose c) who d) where
8. My uncle, ... I love most, helps me with maths.
   a) which b) that c) whose d) whom
9. I must tell you about a man .... I met on my last holiday.
   a) which b) what c) whose d) that
10. Heba, ... works as a nurse, comes from Alexandria.
    a) whose b) who c) whom d) that

3 اسم غير عاقل + which/that الذى/ التى/ الذين + verb/subject

– تحل (which/that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.

إذا كانتا فى محل فاعل فيأتى بعدهما فى الربط فعل، وإذا كانتا فى محل مفعول يأتى بعدهما فاعل لأنه لم يحذف.

- The food went bad. It was out of the fridge.
  The food which/that was out of the fridge went bad. (بعدهما فعل فهما فى محل فاعل)
- The film was boring. We watched it yesterday.
  The film which/that we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدهما فاعل فهما فى محل مفعول)

4 اسم عاقل / غير عاقل + whose للملكية + sentence (subject + verb + object)

- تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذى قبلها.
- تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية: his/her/its/their
لاحظ الفرق بين whose/who's

.... مالك + whose + شيء مملوك للمالك

.... who's + v-ing/p.p. .... (Who's = who is .../has ...)

.... whose .... = ... who has .... = ... with ....

Dina whose eyes are blue is my friend. Dina who has blue eyes is my friend.

- We met the woman. ~~Her~~ husband is a doctor.
  We met the woman whose husband is a doctor.
- The girl ~~with~~ blue eyes is my sister.
  The girl whose eyes are blue is my sister.
- The man is rich. ~~He has~~ a red car.
  The man whose car is red is rich.
- The car won the race. Its colour is red.
  The car whose colour is red won the race.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The mistake .... Ola made was fortunately not very serious.
a) whose b) which c) what d) when

2 The man .... wife is seriously ill is very sad.
a) whose b) where c) which d) that

3 The programme .... we missed is repeated this evening.
a) whose b) when c) what d) that

4 Mount Everest, ... Omar Samra climbed, is the highest mountain in the world.
a) what b) who c) whom d) which

5 The car, ... door is broken, needs to be repaired.
a) who b) when c) whose d) that

6 The book .... I'm reading now is very exciting.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) which

7 We met the man .... car was advertised in the local newspaper.
a) whose b) who's c) who d) whom

8 Tom, ... friend lives in Cairo, has gone on holiday to Egypt.
a) that b) whom c) whose d) who

9 The ice cream .... comes from Italy is delicious.
a) when b) whose c) who d) which

10 Khalid, ... father is a mechanic, has just repaired our car.
a) who's b) whose c) whose his d) who

5 مكان + where = which ...... حرف جر + sentence

- تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث بدل (here/there) فى الجملة الثانية وأيضًا بدلًا من (in/on/at + place)

- The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday ~~there~~.
- The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.
- The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed ~~there~~ for 3 days.
- The hotel where we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.
- The flat is very small. I live ~~in it~~. (حيث أسكن = التى أسكن فيها)
- The flat where I live (which I live in) is very small.
- The flat where I live (in which I live) is very small.

6 اسم يدل على الزمن + when = which/that ...... حرف جر + sentence

- تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى «عندما» مع حذف المكرر فى الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + time/then)

- It's seven o'clock. I get up ~~at that time~~.
- It's seven o'clock when I get up.
- Ramadan is a holy month. We fast ~~in it~~.
- Ramadan when we fast (which/that we fast in) is a holy month.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 August is the month .... a lot of tourists visit Egypt.
a) when b) which c) what d) where

2 The town .... I grew up was very small.
a) which b) where c) that d) when

3 The house .... my grandparents lived is being demolished.
a) whom b) that c) where d) whose

4 2001 is the year .... my brother graduated from university.
a) where b) whose c) when d) which

5 Can you name the year in .... our national team went to the World Cup in Russia?
a) when b) which c) what d) that

6 This is the factory .... my father used to work.
a) when b) why c) which d) where

7 Mother's Day is the time .... people buy their mothers presents.
a) why b) when c) which d) what

8 That's the beach .... I used to go swimming.
a) where b) which c) why d) when

9 The meeting at .... I met a lot of my friends was fruitful.
a) where b) which c) when d) what

10 Cairo, ... we live, is a crowded city.
a) what b) which c) where d) that

أنواع جمل الوصل

١- النوع الأول يعطى معلومة أساسية، وبدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف مـن ـ أو ما هو ـ المقصود. ونستخدم فى هذا النوع (who/which/whom)، ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلًا من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة .

- The man who (that) robbed the bank was sent to prison.
- The book which (that) tells you about history is useful.

٢- النوع الثانى يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة، ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل، ولا تستخدم (that) فى هذا النوع.

- My father, whom I love, works as a teacher.
- Alaa's car, which he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000.

Extra Points

❶ عند وجود حرف جر يمكن كتابته بأكثر من طريقة:

- He bought a new camera. He took interesting photos with it.
- He bought a new camera with which he took interesting photos.
- He bought a new camera which he took interesting photos with.

❷ نستخدم that بعد all وبعد صفات التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

- any (thing) - every (thing) - few - little - many - much - no (thing) - none - some (thing)

- Is this all that you want me to do?
- There isn't anything that we can eat in this house.
- This is the best book that I have ever read.

❸ لا نستخدم حرف جر قبل (that/who):

- This is the clever boy about whom I told you.
- This is the clever boy that (who/whom) I told you about.

٥ تستخدم what كرابط ولا يأتي قبلها اسم وهي تساوي the thing (s) that

فاعل / فعل	what ما	قبلها فعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هي عليه

- I didn't understand what he had said (what had been said).
- I can't give you what you need.
- What puzzled me was Ahmed's attitude.

٦ تستخدم (which) للمكان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث داخل المكان وهي بدل الضمير they/it لغير العاقل:

- Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded.
- Cairo, which I love most, is the capital of Egypt.

٧ تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها:

- My brother won a valuable prize, which made me happy.

٨ هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل، فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ whose مثل:

stay, dream, work, play, likes and dislikes, end, hopes, etc.

- The student whose dream has been achieved is over the moon.
- People whose stay ended should renew it.

٩ تأتي why بمعنى الذي بعد الاسم reason أو بعد فعل بمعنى لماذا:

- The reason why he was ill hasn't been known yet.
- I didn't understand why he had behaved so badly at the meeting.

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

١ يمكن حذف (who (whom) – which – that) إذا استخدمت للمفعول مادامت لم تسبق بحرف جر.

- The boy who (whom/that) I wanted to talk to was not at home.
- The boy I wanted to talk to was not at home.

٢ إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول نحذف which + v-to be ونضع p.p.:

I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

٣ إذا كان بعده معلوم نحذف which/who ونضع v-ing:

The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

٤ إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف which/who + v-to be ولا نضع شيئًا:

Mohamed Salah, a famous footballer, has won many prizes. (who is)

لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The bomb .... went off this morning caused a lot of damage.
a) when b) whom c) which d) where

2 Did you remember the meeting at .... we first met?
a) who b) that c) where d) which

3 Look at that building .... windows are all broken.
a) that b) whose c) which d) where

4 The person .... the police were questioning has been released.
a) that b) where c) which d) whose

5 This is the bus .... I have been waiting for.
a) who b) where c) whom d) that

6 Biology is a subject about .... I know very little.
a) when b) which c) that d) whom

7 Mr Emad is the person from .... I got the information.
a) who b) that c) whom d) whose

8 The president met the man .... son came first in the competition.
a) whom b) who's c) that d) whose

9 Alexandria, ... is the second capital city, has many comfortable resorts.
a) where b) which c) when d) whose

10 He told me about all .... happened to him in his childhood.
a) that b) why c) which d) where

11 I visited the village in .... I was born.
a) where b) which c) that d) when

12 Shakespeare, ... plays are well-known worldwide, is a great playwright.
a) where b) that c) whose d) who

13 The university .... started a new project aims at improving living conditions.
a) who b) when c) where d) which

14 Ten people .... three children were injured in the plane crash.
a) included b) which included c) including d) who were included

15 My cousin, ... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.
a) that b) who's c) whom d) whose

16 Aswan is a city .... my family always enjoy visiting.
a) whom b) when c) where d) which

17 You wanted to tell me about the time .... you lost your keys. What happened?
a) whose b) when c) which d) where

18 Heba lost the book .... her last month.
a) which I lent it b) which lent c) I lent d) who lent

19 I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find .... I wanted.
a) that b) what c) which d) whose

20 The reason .... I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.
a) where b) which c) why d) whose

21 My friend with .... I went out was generous.
a) who b) that c) whose d) whom

22 My sister's brother made a big mistake, ... she should apologise for.
a) which b) whom c) who d) why

23 El-Shamadan is a food company .... most famous product is chocolate.
a) who b) which c) whose d) where

24 People .... work requires staying up late suffer a lot in life.
a) which b) where c) who d) whose

25 There's a girl .... for you outside the gate to help her.
a) waiting b) waits c) waited d) is waiting

26 Sham El Nesseim , ... marks the beginning of spring ,is a day of family gathering.
a) when b) which c) where d) that

27 The hotel, ... was on a mountain, had fantastic views from the bedrooms.
a) that b) where c) which d) when

28 What is the name of the teacher .... used to teach us maths?
a) whose b) whom c) who's d) who

29 That's the hospital .... Ola went when she was ill.
a) where b) whose c) who d) which

30 We met the woman .... husband went to school with my father.
a) that b) which c) where d) whose

31 Hossam, ... hobby is horse riding , has broken his leg.
a) who b) when c) whose d) that

32 18 is the age .... we can get driving licences and identity cards.
a) at when b) at which c) in which d) on which

33 I don't like people .... words are so rude.
a) whose b) who c) whom d) that

34 Here's the barber's .... I have my hair cut.
a) that b) who c) whom d) where

35 Siwa, ... is an oasis, is full of olives and dates.
a) when b) which c) where d) that

36 I live in a house .... entrance is guarded by two big dogs.
a) when b) that c) whose d) where

37 In hospitals they wake patients at 6 a.m, ... is much too early.
a) when b) which c) where d) why

38 The furniture .... by this company is tasteful and lasts for a long time.
a) which made b) made c) is made d) which making

39 The furniture company, ... is in Helwan, employs 1,000 employees.
a) which b) what c) where d) that

40 My mother .... is the best person in the world.
a) who I love b) , who I love, c) that I love d) , which I love,

41 Do you know .... man standing near Osama is?
a) who b) that c) whom d) who that

42 This is the restaurant .... I usually go for my meals.
a) to which b) which c) at which d) in which

43 The flat .... is overlooking the Nile.
a) which he bought it b) he bought it c) he bought d) he buys

44 The boys .... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.
a) who b) who's c) which d) whose

45 They treated the poor man rudely, ... made me angry.
a) which b) whom c) who d) in which

46 The artist .... works are shown in the gallery has won the first prize.
a) which b) who c) whose d) whom

47 Show me .... you've got in your hand.
a) which b) what c) why d) that

48 The meat .... yesterday was delicious.
a) eating b) which ate c) eaten d) which eaten

49 The man in .... house we live is one of our relatives.
a) which b) whom c) where d) whose

50 The man .... this luxurious house is very modest.
a) owning b) owned c) who is owned d) owns

2 Fill in the space:

1 My school, ...(a)............. is called Alzahraa, has about 2,000 students. My favourite teacher, ...(b)............. is called Mr Walid, teaches sport. The sports centre, ...(c)............. I play basketball and tennis, is the largest in the area. I walk to school every day with my friend Mohamed, ...(d)............. father teaches history. Friday is the time ....(e)............. my friends and I meet to play and have a nice time together in the club ....(f)............. is near my house.

2 My son ....(a)............. is studying medicine at Cairo is going on holiday. His uncle Sameh invited him to Alexandria ....(b)............. he bought a new house last month. He is putting all his clothes into the suitcase ....(c)............. he has just bought. The train ....(d)............. he is going to catch leaves at 11 a.m. His uncle, in ....(e)............. house he is going to stay, is a doctor too. My son .... (f)............. has never gone to Alexandria before, is very excited about it.

3 When Omar was at school, he loved telling jokes ....(a)............. made his classmates laugh. All his teachers ....(b)............. taught him agreed that he was a talented boy. While he ....(c)............. studying at school, he joined a local theatre group .... (d)............. he acted. He enjoyed acting more ....(e)............. school, but all the actors ....(f)............. works were influential advised him not to leave school.

4 Many people are vegetarians. This means that they avoid ....(a)............. meat of any kind. Some do so ....(b)............. they want to prevent cruelty against animals while others hope to improve ....(c)............. health. ....(d)............. a vegetarian, requires a lot of effort and dedication. Although they prevent themselves .... (e)............. meals ....(f)............. are made from meat, they feel healthy and energetic.

5 How much sleep ....(a)............. we need? Most of us need about eight hours sleep a night. Children ....(b)............. teenagers need about ten hours. If you have a few nights of sleeping less ....(c)............. eight hours, you should try to make ....(d)............. for this by ....(e)............. more when you get the chance. A 1959 American Cancer study showed that people who sleep about eight hours a night are likely to live longer than those ....(f)............. sleep less than seven hours.

6 Last week, the police arrested a very dangerous criminal. Now, he is ....(a)............. questioned at the police station. He is accused ....(b)............. being the leader of a gang ....(c)............. have stolen art treasures from museums ....(d)............. last January. The police are doing ....(e)............. best to catch them and they feel sure that they will ....(f)............. arrested the rest of the gang by the end of the month.

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A taxi can take you .... you want to go in the city.
a) whatever b) whenever c) wherever d) however

2 You've got a camera with you, ...?
a) haven't you b) don't you c) have you d) do you

3 I didn't see .... I recognised at the conference.
a) everyone b) no one c) someone d) anyone

4 Soha works .... a receptionist in a telecommunication company.
a) in b) as c) by d) like

5 I haven't been to the beach the .... summer.
a) every b) all c) whole d) each

6 .... of what you say, I still believe Zamalek can win this game.
a) In spite b) Despite c) Although d) No matter

7 I have an appointment with the doctor later .... afternoon.
a) those b) that c) these d) this

8 .... he been invited, he would have come to the party.
a) Should b) Had c) Were d) Would

9 That suitcase over there belongs to ....
a) myself b) mine c) me d) my

10 Galal asked me .... him hang the picture.
a) to help b) help c) to be helping d) helped

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Negotiating التفاوض/مناقشة أكثر من رأى

- Surely the best place for the (factory) is ...
- The reason for doing this is (that) ...
- If you (put the factory) there, it would ...
- Although ... is a good idea, we must/mustn't forget that ...
- I agree that is a good reason, but .../However, ...

Writing: A negotiating email

Activity

The traffic is very bad in your city and there are plans to build a new road to help the situation. One plan is to build the road next to your school because this will take cars very quickly into the city. The other plan is to build the road next to the railway line, but this is a longer road. Plan an email negotiating where to put the road. Your name is Mohamed and you are sending the email to Mr Osama.

Tips for Writing an email

1. Start the email.
2. Say that you understand why they have planned to build a road by the school.
3. Explain what problems this plan might have.
4. Suggest the other plan as a better choice.
5. Give your reasons for this.
6. Give a summary of your ideas.
7. End the email.

Model email

To : Mr Osama
Subject : A new road

Dear Mr Osama,

I was interested to read about your company's plans to build a new road to help the traffic in the city. You said that the first plan is to build it near my school because this will take cars very quickly into the city. I agree that is a good reason, but we mustn't forget that it will cause a lot of noise and it can affect the students' health because of the fumes from the cars.

Surely the best place to build the road is next to the railway line. I agree that it will be longer, but it will save us noise and air pollution near our school. Besides, people who use the railway can benefit a lot from this road.

I hope you agree to my ideas. I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Mohamed

Skills EXercises

1 **Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:**

1. The different forms of pollution and how to eliminate pollution before destroying mankind.
2. The role which literature can play to improve children's characters and behaviour.

2 **A) Translate into Arabic:**

1. There are many kinds of pollution that represent a real danger to life on the planet. That's why we should find solutions for this serious problem.
2. Egypt's youth are renewable energy that must be invested and benefited from. With their efforts, we can have a great nation.
3. We are living in the age of tremendous speed where there is no room for laziness. This speed also increases stress and leads to serious diseases.
4. Studying the lives of great scientists and writers shows that we all should exert great efforts to succeed in life. It is said that "No gain without pain".
5. The Egyptian civilisation began thousands of years ago. Therefore, Egypt is called the birthplace of civilisation.
6. Many people believe that art can play a role in enhancing the social values. Films and plays can also fight value deterioration among young men.

B) Translate into English:

١- الحفاظ على نظافة مياه النيل ليس مسئولية الحكومة فقط بل يجب علينا كلنا أن نشارك فى ذلك.
٢- للشعر والقصص المسلية تأثير كبير على مشاعر الأطفال؛ لذا يجب تشجيعهم على القراءة.
٣- يجب أن نمنع المصانع من إلقاء مخلفاتها الكيماوية فى مياه الأنهار لأن ذلك يدمر صحة الناس والحيوانات.
٤- تواجه مصر مشكلات اقتصادية واجتماعية كثيرة تتطلب حلولًا مبدعة تعتمد على التقدم التكنولوجى والبحث العلمى.
٥- يجب أن تهتم الحكومات بالتعليم لأنه أساس التغيير والتطور الذى ينشده أى مجتمع.
٦- غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أسلوب تواصل الناس؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

basis	أساس	invest	يستثمر
birthplace	مهد	nation	أمة
civilisation	الحضارة	represent	يمثل
creative	مبدعة	responsibility	مسئولية
deterioration	تدهور	stress	ضغط
economic	اقتصادية	tremendous	هائل
enhance	يعزز	values	قيم
exert	يبذل		

Test 2 Based on Unit 2

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The children sat quietly listening to their grandfather's .... stories which made them laugh.
a) amusing b) boring c) dull d) adventurous

2 This is the hotel .... rooms have a view of the sea.
a) which b) where c) whose d) what

3 Al Ahram Organisation could .... many modern stories by Egyptian writers.
a) spread b) hide c) publish d) believe

4 That house, ... was sold yesterday, is 200 years old.
a) which b) whose c) where d) that

5 Scientists say that the .... from this factory is killing animals in the area.
a) waste b) wave c) weight d) wildlife

6 Vegetables .... contain vitamin C are very important to our health.
a) whose b) who c) what d) which

7 The teacher asked the students to .... silent while explaining the lesson.
a) remember b) remind c) remain d) return

8 Scientists believe that the earth is the only .... that has life on it.
a) asteroid b) plant c) star d) planet

9 Susan had finished cleaning the house .... I arrived.
a) until b) after c) as soon as d) by the time

10 When I was young, I always bought Mickey, a magazine which came .... every week.
a) in b) out c) of d) about

11 If only Tasneem .... and broken her leg.
a) fell b) had fallen c) hadn't fallen d) would fall

12 Keeping clean and healthy food usually .... you from many diseases.
a) provide b) predict c) protect d) attack

13 When .... the Eiffel Tower ....?
a) has / built b) was / built c) had / built d) is / built

14 The opposite of the word "amusing" is ....
a) boring b) rare c) delightful d) ending

15 The atmosphere at work had become ...., so he resigned to look for a better place.

a) pleasant b) poisonous c) relevant d) venomous

16 During the Second World War many European countries combined against their .... enemy, Germany.

a) ending b) private c) general d) common

17 **Fill in the space:**

My aunt and uncle, ...(a).................... live in Port Said, have a big house with a garden. They do most of ....(b).................... work themselves. My aunt ....(c).................... gardening and her friends say it is the prettiest garden in ....(d).................... world! At the moment, my uncle is painting the house ....(e).................... and his friend, Mr Sobhy, is ....(f).................... him.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El Said caught her eye. Karima El Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory. She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots in the carpets. The article shocked Nahla. Karima El Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack. But she couldn't get Karima El Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labour and exploitation. The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines and factories.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 One of the following isn't true ....

a) Nahla is about 23 years now

b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school

c) Nahla and Karima are the same age

d) Nahla was sorry for Karima

19 This story shows that you .... to help others.

a) don't have to be old
b) must be old
c) need to be courageous
d) have to be a student

20 The best title to the passage is ....

a) How to help others
b) Children are more useful than adults
c) Children in plantations
d) Child employment and manipulation

21 The underlined word "plantations" means ....

a) shops
b) schools
c) farms
d) markets

B) Answer the following questions:

22 When did Nahla know about Karima El Said's story?

23 Why was Nahla shocked when she read the story?

24 What do you think the reasons for the child labour and exploitation in societies?

25 **Translate into English:**

– القراءة مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك ولها تأثير مهدئ. يمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء.

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Although there are selfish and evil people in society, there are still honest people who do what they are convinced is right.

27 **Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:**

1. Having free time is something you should value and spend in useful things.
2. Building up a good citizen needs great efforts from all people and organisations.



Unit 3

Water and Food Safety

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist; listening for detail
Grammar	: The passive infinitive and expressions with *It*
Reading	: Reading for gist; reading for detail
Critical thinking	: Understanding water and food safety
Functions	: Making recommendations
Writing	: Writing a report about an illness

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف/ يهدف
artificial (adj)	صناعى
carelessness (n)	إهمال
careless (adj)	مهمل
count on (v) (ed)	يعتمد على
deliberately (adv)	عمدًا
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد/ يتواجد
existence (n)	وجود
expiry (n)	انتهاء صلاحية
expire (v) (d)	تنتهى صلاحيته
fertile (adj)	خصب
fine (v) (d) (n)	يُغرم/ غرامة
industry (n)	صناعة
industrial (adj)	صناعى
ingredients (n)	مكونات طعام
label (n)	بطاقة بيانات منتج
manage (v) (d)	يدير
management (n)	إدارة
manufacture (v) (d)	يصنع
properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
raw (adj)	نيء/ غير مطهي
reliable (adj)	موثوق به

Vocabulary On Listening

advice (n)	نصيحة
careful (adj)	حريص
communication (n)	اتصالات
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل
danger (n)	خطر
farm (n)	مزرعة
flood (n) (v) (ed)	فيضان/ يفيض
generosity (n)	كرم
generous (adj)	كريم
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/ يبلغ عن
result (n) (v) (ed)	نتيجة/ ينتج
soil (n)	تربة
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
warning (n)	تحذير

Vocabulary On Reading

bake (v) (d)	يخبز	insect (n)	حشرة
check (v) (ed)	يفحص / يراجع	land (v) (ed) (n)	يهبط / يستقر / أرض
cover (v) (ed)	يغطى	list (n)	قائمة
date (n)	تاريخ	organisation (n)	منظمة
fresh (adj)	طازج	owner (n)	مالك
germs (n)	جراثيم	safe (adj)	آمن
information (n)	معلومات	safety (n)	أمان
inform (v) (ed)	يخبر	tasty (adj)	طيب المذاق
		trust (v) (ed) (n)	يثق بـ / ثقة

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

advertise (v) (d)	يعلن عن	ketchup (n)	كاتشب / صلصة طماطم
advertisement (n)	إعلان	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	plough (ed) (v) (n)	يحرث الأرض / محراث
belong to (v) (ed)	ينتمى إلى / يخص	plural (n)	جمع (الأسماء)
caffeine (n)	مادة الكافيين	poster (n)	ملصق إعلانى
carbonated (adj)	كربونى / غازى (مشروب)	preservative (n)	مادة حافظة
corn (n)	حبوب الذرة	print (v) (ed)	يطبع
crisps (n)	بطاطس مقلية	printed (adj)	مطبوع
flavour (n)	نكهة / طعم	production (n)	إنتاج
injured (adj)	مصاب	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
injury (n)	إصابة	producer (n)	منتج

recommend (v) (ed)	يوصي بـ / يرشح	sunflower oil (n)	زيت دوّار الشمس
recommendation (n)	توصية / ترشيح	syllable (n)	مقطع
repair (v) (ed)	يصلح	unhealthy (adj)	غير صحي
revise (v) (d)	يراجع	valid (adj)	صالح للاستعمال
storm (n)	عاصفة	vinegar (n)	خل

Focus on Vocabulary

aim	هدف / يهدف	the thing that you are hoping to achieve
artificial	اصطناعي	not real or not made of natural things but made to be like something that is real or natural
caffeine	مادة الكافيين	a chemical in coffee, tea and other drinks that makes you feel more active
carbonated water	مياه غازية	water containing small amounts of air
carelessness	إهمال	a failure to give enough thought and attention to something important
count on	يعتمد على	trust someone or something
deliberately	عمدًا	describes doing something intentionally; on purpose
exist	يوجد	to be a real thing; to live or be present in the world
expiry	صلاحية	the end of a period of time in which something can be used
fertile	خصب	able to support the growth of plants, animals or ideas

fine	يُغرِّم	punish a person, group, or business by making them pay money
flavour	نكهة / طعم	the particular taste of a food or drink
industry	صناعة	the production of goods, especially in factories
ingredients	مكونات طعام	what the food is made of
label	بطاقة منتج	a piece of paper that gives information about a product
make sure	يتأكد	check that something has been done or is true
manage	يدير	be responsible for a business or department, be in charge
manufacture	يصنع	to use machines to make goods or materials, usually in large numbers or amounts
preservative	مادة حافظة	something which stops food from going bad
properly	بشكل صحيح	done in a correct or satisfactory way
raw	نيء / غير مطهى	not cooked
reliable	موثوق به	describes something that can be trusted to work well or be safe
valid	صالح للاستعمال	allowed to be used
vinegar	خل	a liquid with a strong taste, used to preserve vegetables

Expressions & Idioms

do a school project يقوم بمشروع (بحث) مدرسي	make a television advertisement يقدم إعلانًا تليفزيونيًا
get better يتحسن	make recommendation يقوم بتوصية
keep the Nile clean يحافظ على نظافة النيل	make a video يصور فيلم فيديو

Phrases & Prepositions

aim of هدف من	land on يهبط / يستقر على
careful with حريص مع	made of مصنوع من
filled with مملوء بـ	revise for يراجع من أجل
full of مليء بـ	warn about يحذر من
happen to يحدث لـ	worried about قلق على

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
artificial	صناعي	unreal/man-made	natural طبيعي
deliberately	عمدًا	purposely	accidentally بالمصادفة / بالخطأ
exist	يوجد	live/happen	die يموت
fertile	خصب	productive	infertile/ barren غير خصب / قاحلة
generosity	كرم	hospitality	meanness البخل
manage	يدير	run/direct	mismanage يسيء إدارة
properly	بشكل صحيح	perfectly/well	improperly/wrongly بشكل غير صحيح
raw	نيء	fresh	cooked مطبوخ
reliable	موثوق به	honest/dependable	dishonest/unreliable غير أمين / غير موثوق به
safety	سلامة / أمان	protection/security	danger/ jeopardy خطر

trust ثقة	confidence	distrust	فقدان الثقة
valid صالح	credible	invalid	غير صالح
warn يحذر	alert	ignore	يتجاهل

Notes on Vocabulary

earth floor ground land soil

earth الكرة الأرضية/ تراب
- The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.

floor طابق فى بناية/ أرضية الحجرة
- The floor of the flat needs cleaning.
- My flat is on the fourth floor.

ground أرض فضاء
- On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.

land اليابسة
- The earth consists of water and land.

soil تربة (زراعية/ رملية)
- This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil not sandy soil.

advertisement announcement

advertisement إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة
- The organisers of the concert had taken out a full page advertisement in the newspaper.

announcement إعلان عن/ إذاعة خبر
- The minister وزير made an important announcement at a news conference.

ingredients components

ingredients مكونات(تخلط لصنع طعام)
- The delicious dish is home-cooked using fresh ingredients.

components مكونات (منفصلة لتشغيل آلة/ نظام)
- My uncle owns a company that makes electronic components for computer products.

recommend / advise

recommend
١- يوصى بـ
٢- يرشح (شخصًا) لعمل ما

- I recommend that you buy a more powerful computer.
- We recommend going to the club to practise sports.
- We recommended our friend Ahmed for the job.

advise
ينصح (بفعل شىء)

- Her doctor advised her to rest.
- The teacher advised us that we should study more to pass exams.

tasty / tasteful

tasty
ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)

- My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.

tasteful
ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)

- The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.

communication / connection

communication
اتصال/ تواصل/ تفاهم

- Radio was the pilot's only means of communication.
- The natural communication system for humans is speech.

connection
صلة/ علاقة (للربط بين شيئين)

- Students must realise that there is a connection between education and their future.

list / menu

list
قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)

- I made a list of all the jobs I had to do in the house.

menu
١ – قائمة طعام (فى مطعم)
٢ – قائمة (مهام/ إعدادات) فى جهاز

- He looked at the menu and decided to have chicken with rice.
- The menu bar with its windows is one of the features of the desktop.

Plural with Nouns ending in (O)

بعض الكلمات التى تنتهى بـ (o) تجمع بإضافة (es) كالتالى:

hero → heroes	volcano → volcanoes
potato → potatoes	tomato → tomatoes

لكن كثيرًا من الكلمات التى تنتهى بـ (o) تجمع بإضافة (s) مثل:

radio → radios	photo → photos
video → videos	kilo → kilos
zero → zeros	piano → pianos

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There's barely enough .... space to fit a bed in this room.
a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

2 I've made a .... of places I'd like to visit while we're in Aswan.
a) list b) menu c) title d) leaflet

3 The tie my friend wore at the interview was simple but very ....
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

4 The minister refused to make an official .... about the new law.
a) advertisement b) sign c) announcement d) advancement

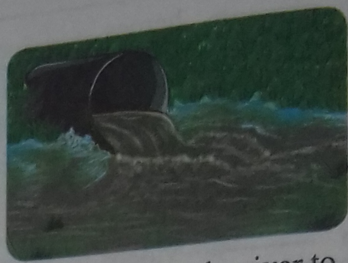
5 Nowadays much of the food we eat at restaurants contains artificial ....
a) components b) ingredients c) equipment d) recipes

6 Television, radio and other forms of mass .... have made the world a global village.
a) link b) connection c) affection d) communication

7 Fast food can be ...., but it contains a lot of fat.
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

8 Which type of oil do you .... for my car?
a) advise b) object c) recommend d) apply

Listening Text



Reem: Did you read this report[1] in the newspaper, Nihal? It's about a girl called Maya who was very ill.

Nihal: Oh dear. What happened?

Reem: It is believed that she became ill after she washed some vegetables. She lives on a farm near the Nile and she used water from the river to wash them. The water was not clean.

Nihal: What happened to the girl?

Reem: She was taken to hospital. She nearly died, but now she is better. However, she wants to warn[2] people about the dangers of water from the Nile.

Nihal: What does she want us to know?

Reem: She did a school project about pollution in the Nile and she sent it to a newspaper. This is what her report says. It is thought that waste which is put into the river by factories is often so poisonous that it kills the fish. Sometimes the pollution is put in the river deliberately[3] and sometimes through carelessness[4]. Maya says that you must never wash food using water that may be filled with toxic chemicals.

Nihal: That's very sad. The water from the Nile used to make the soil[5] fertile[6]. Farmers liked the Nile floods[7] because the soil helped their vegetables to grow.

Reem: That's true. Her report says that we need water for farms, for industry[8] and for drinking. To get enough water, we have to use water from the Nile. The problem is that each year, there are more and more people who need more and more water. Now, it is said that in Egypt, about 38 million people drink polluted water. It is believed that 10,000 people become very ill every year as a result.

Nihal: What can we do about the problem?

Reem: I hope that the Nile's water will be managed[9] better in the future, so it won't be so polluted. But the most important thing is that we should all be taught about the dangers that exist[10] today. Never drink dirty water from the Nile, and be careful not to wash fruit or vegetables using dirty water as well.

Nihal: That's good advice. Thanks, Reem.

(1) تقرير
(2) يحذر
(3) عمدًا
(4) إهمال
(5) تربة
(6) خصب
(7) فيضانات
(8) صناعة
(9) يُدار
(10) يوجد/ يتواجد

Reading Text

Know what you eat



When you buy food from a shop, it is not always easy to know where the food has come from. There are now food safety organisations whose aim is to make sure that all the food that you buy is safe to eat.

Labels[1] on the food may have a list of ingredients[2], so you know if they are natural or artificial[3]. The labels should say when the food was manufactured[4] and give an expiry[5] date saying when it should be eaten by. Owners of shops that sell food that has gone past its expiry date can be fined[6]. Never eat food later than the expiry date or it might make you very ill. The food safety organisations cannot check all the food that is sold. For example, when you buy fruit and vegetables such as oranges, potatoes and tomatoes, you might not know if they were grown using chemicals that may be bad for you. Was your bread baked in a place that was clean, or was it full of germs?

You must be very careful with meat and cheese. You should always buy fresh meat and cheese, so make sure that they have not been in the shop for too long unless they are kept cool. Cheese should also be covered when it is taken to the shops, so that insects cannot land on it. It is always best to buy food from a reliable[7] shop or market, where you know that you can count on[8] your food being both tasty and healthy. You must also be careful when you buy cooked food from the street. Meat that is raw[9] or not properly[10] cooked can make you very ill if you eat it.

(1) بطاقة منتج
(2) مكونات
(3) صناعى
(4) يُصنع
(5) انتهاء صلاحية
(6) يُغرم
(7) موثوق به
(8) يعتمد على
(9) نيء/ غير مطهى
(10) بشكل صحيح

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

1 It is believed that she became ill after she washed some vegetables.
- الصيغة It is believed صيغة مبنى للمجهول بمعنى يُعتقد أن.
- لاحظ الفعل بعد after وهو washed جاء بصيغة ماضٍ بسيط وليس ماضيًا تامًا لعدم وجود فاصل زمنى بين الحدثين.

2 This is what her report says.
- استخدمت what كضمير وصل بمعنى (ما أو الشيء الذى).

3 It is thought that waste which is put into the river by factories is often so poisonous that it kills the fish.
- أداة الربط so....that بمعنى «جدًا لدرجة أن» وبينهما صفة.

4 Maya says that you must never wash food using water.
Her report says that we need water for farms, ...
- لم يتم تحويل الفعلين (must - need) إلى ماضٍ فى هاتين الجملتين إلى غير المباشر؛ لأن فعل القول says بصيغة المضارع وليس الماضى.

5 Never drink dirty water from the Nile.
Never eat food later than the expiry date or it might make you very ill.
- بدأت الجملتان هنا بـ Never وليس Don't للتأكيد على أهمية النهى وعدم فعله مطلقًا.

6 When you buy fruit and vegetables such as potatoes and tomatoes, ...
- تستخدم such as لإعطاء أمثلة داخل الجملة بنفس معنى (like) ولكن إذا أردنا إعطاء مثال بجملة كاملة نستخدم (for example).

7 That's good advice.
- لم تستخدم أداة نكرة (a-an) فى الجملة؛ لأن كلمة advice اسم غير معدود.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An .... is a piece of paper that gives information about a product.
a) flavour b) manufacture c) advertisement d) label

2 In Japan, they don't cook fish but they eat it ....
a) straw b) raw c) rare d) rapid

3 My cousin works for a small company .... computer parts.
a) identifying b) building c) printing d) manufacturing

4 Cotton is one of the crops which needs .... land to grow.
a) fertile b) artificial c) man-made d) toxic

5 I always .... on my parents for good advice about my problems.
a) calculate b) count c) number d) turn

6 The .... of the research is to find new ways of cleaning polluted water.
a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim

7 The cook says we must mix all the .... very well before putting them in the dish.
a) ingredients b) components c) parts d) containers

8 The owner of this restaurant was .... for using expired meat.
a) fired b) fined c) rewarded d) reviewed

9 Police officers believe the fire was .... started by thieves to cover the robbery.
a) slowly b) harshly c) mistakenly d) deliberately

10 The company's food products contain no .... colours, flavours, or preservatives.
a) artificial b) industrial c) false d) organised

11 A/An .... date is the end of a period of time in which something can be used.
a) expiry b) production c) advertisement d) selling

12 Science gives us hope that many diseases will not .... in our future world.
a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) cure

13 My parents always advises me to buy food from a .... shop or market.
a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised

14 My uncle .... a hotel near the beach which attracts a lot of tourists in the area.
a) designs b) builds c) manages d) closes

15 Our science teacher .... us about toxic chemicals.
a) included b) warned c) preserved d) recommended

16 Egypt should improve its .... to limit our imports.
a) sports b) industry c) deserts d) beaches

17 We all should work hard to .... the Nile clean.
a) rescue b) save c) keep d) avoid

18 This .... is not suitable for planting cotton as it is poor.
a) earth b) soil c) floor d) ground

19 An important part of the school project is to .... a video about water pollution.
a) do b) photograph c) make d) cause

20 Which .... do you like in your ice cream – chocolate or vanilla?
a) colour b) taste c) flavour d) component

21 The newspaper .... about the match was so exciting that I read it twice.
a) image b) report c) conference d) document

22 Many of the .... that cause disease pass from our hands into our mouths.
a) insects b) flies c) germs d) birds

23 The boy got low marks because of his .... that led to many mistakes.
a) carefulness b) usefulness c) carelessness d) uselessness

24 You must always .... the food until you are ready to eat it.
a) cover b) spoil c) damage d) refresh

25 If you allow insects to .... on your food, they will make it bad to eat.
a) revise b) inspect c) fly d) land

26 My mother made a really .... dish with chicken and rice.
a) tasteful b) tasting c) taste d) tasty

27 My friend's bedroom walls are full of .... of his favourite sports stars.
a) postures b) papers c) essays d) posters

28 The company's name is .... across the top of the letters they send.
a) carved b) printed c) published d) spread

29 The factory provides the workers with expensive .... equipment.
a) peace b) hazard c) stability d) safety

30 Al Ahram Newspaper is full of .... for cars especially on Friday.
a) advertisements b) announcements c) advancements d) disappointments

31 It would be difficult to .... him to leave his job for a new one.
a) persuade b) make c) let d) employ

32 My father has a notebook that is filled .... stories and poems.
a) at b) with c) on d) for

33 All students should make a plan to revise .... their exams.
a) for b) in c) at d) about

34 Farmers liked the Nile .... because the soil helped their vegetables to grow.
a) droughts b) currents c) waves d) floods

35 Coca Cola is specialised in .... soft drinks, lemonade and mineral water.
a) carbonated b) caramel c) colour d) carbohydrate

36 .... is a chemical in coffee, tea and other drinks that makes you feel more active.
a) Oxide b) Nicotine c) Caffeine d) Gas

37 A .... is a substance which stops food from going bad.
a) prediction b) professional c) preserve d) preservative

38 You need a .... passport to be able to travel abroad.
a) virtual b) valid c) varied d) valueless

39 Parents should teach their children to behave .... with strangers.
a) probably b) improperly c) properly d) carelessly

40 Mr Fouad is the first person on the waiting .... for the interview
a) menu b) book c) role d) list

41 I asked my friend if he could .... any recommendation about a place for the holiday.
a) do b) make c) perform d) devise

42 The science teacher asked us to .... a school project about polluted water.
a) do b) make c) conduct d) carry

43 The food safety organisations cannot .... all the food that is sold. We should help them.
a) produce b) check c) damage d) save

44 I .... this book to anyone with an interest in chemistry.
a) recommend b) advise c) warn d) neglect

45 Toshiba is increasing the .... of its popular line of laptop computers
a) deduction b) prediction c) production d) consumption

46 I love it when my mum .... cakes. They smell fantastic!
a) feeds b) bakes c) cooks d) describes

47 It was .... of the rich man to donate a million pound for charity.
a) cowardly b) miserly c) hasty d) generous

48 This man is a liar - you can't .... a word he says.
a) trust b) suspect c) disapprove d) doubt

49 All experts advise us to try to .... foods which contain a lot of fat.
a) consume b) propose c) avoid d) feed

50 The old lady was advised to stay in bed to rest her .... back.
a) injured b) healthy c) cured d) healing

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The word "man-made" is a synonym to the word ....
a) ordinary b) artificial c) industrial d) natural

2 I don't .... Samy as a friend anymore. I can't trust him.
a) calculate b) rely c) estimate d) count

3 Mohamed Salah has all the .... of a great footballer.
a) components b) parts c) ingredients d) quantities

4 Can you give me some advice on how to .... my time better?
a) manage b) direct c) misuse d) succeed

5 Most Ordinary people can't afford designer .... clothes such as Adidas and Nike.
a) poster b) label c) type d) make

6 Oil is an important .... material that can be processed into many different products, including plastics.
a) cooked b) barren c) modern d) raw

7 The local people say that the building of a new factory would destroy the .... of their neighbourhood.
a) taste b) flavour c) recipe d) ingredient

8 The word "meanness" can be an antonym to the word ....
a) generosity b) honour c) virtue d) vice

9 Traffic police must have a .... reason for closing the road until midnight.
a) void b) varied c) valid d) illegal

10 The anti-smoking campaign is .... at teenagers who are between 13 and 19 years old.
a) aimed b) managed c) fired d) placed

Grammar

Revision

Active & Passive Voice المبنى للمعلوم و المبنى للمجهول

المبنى للمعلوم: هو الجملة التى يذكر فاعلها ونبدأ به الجملة ويكون التركيز على من قام بالفعل (سواء كان عاقلًا أو غير عاقل)، وتتكون الجملة من:

Active:

Subject + *verb* + *object*

e.g. *Children* + *like* + *sweets.*

المبنى للمجهول: هو الجملة التى نبدأ فيها بالمفعول فربما لا نعرف من الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره أو هو معروف جدًا:

Passive:

- Osama's car was stolen last night. (We don't know who stole it).
- The thieves were arrested yesterday.

- قُبِضَ على اللصوص أمس (معروف من الذى يقبض على اللصوص، فلا داعى لذكر البوليس)

وتتكون الجملة فى المبنى للمجهول من:

Object المفعول يصبح فاعلا	+	verb to be am/is/are/was/were/be/being/been على حسب زمن الجملة	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث

Changing from Active into Passive

Tense	Passive	Example
Present simple	Obj. + am/is/are + p.p.	• Farmers grow cotton in Egypt. • Cotton is grown in Egypt.
Past simple	Obj. + was/were + p.p.	• They built this house in 1990. • This house was built in 1990.
Present continuous	Obj. + am/is/are + being + p.p.	• The mechanic is repairing our car now. • Our car is being repaired now.
Past continuous	Obj. + was/were + being + p.p.	• When I arrived, mother was cooking food. • When I arrived, food was being cooked.
Present perfect	Obj. + have/has + been + p.p.	• He has invited us to a party. • We've been invited to a party.
Past perfect	Obj. + had + been + p.p.	• By yesterday, I had booked the ticket. • By yesterday, the ticket had been booked.
Future with will	Obj. + will be + p.p.	• People will do shopping on the internet. • Shopping will be done on the internet.
Future perfect	Obj. + will have + been + p.p.	• She'll have written the reports by tomorrow. • The reports will have been written by tomorrow.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Their new house .... at the moment.
a) is decorated b) is being decorated c) decorates d) is decorating

2 While the room ...., Hala found her gold ring.
a) was cleaning b) was being cleaned c) was cleaned d) cleaning

3 The housework .... yet.
a) wasn't done b) hasn't done
c) isn't done d) hasn't been done

4 The car .... before we went to the cinema.
a) is washed b) had been washed c) will be washed d) had washed

5 The boxes were opened and the books .... out by the boys.
a) are taken b) took c) were taken d) has been taken

6 The road .... due to an oil spill.
a) will close b) has been closed c) has closed d) is closing

7 Look! Our exam papers .... by our teacher.
a) are marked b) are marking
c) are being marked d) are going to mark

8 The party invitations .... yesterday afternoon.
a) were sent b) sent c) had been sent d) have been sent

9 Most children are strongly .... by their parents.
a) been influenced b) being influenced c) influencing d) influenced

10 After the letter ...., it was posted.
a) has been written b) was written c) had written d) is written

1 The infinitive form of Passive verbs (be + p.p.)

الأفعال التى يأتى بعدها المصدر فى المبنى للمعلوم يأتى بعدها (be + p.p.) فى المبنى للمجهول

الأفعال التى يأتى بعدها المصدر	Examples
will سوف	A meeting will be held next Tuesday.
would كان سوف	I would be given a ride if Ali had a car.
may ربما	The problem may be solved in a number of different ways.
might ربما	It is terrifying. We might be killed.
can يستطيع	This question can't be easily answered.
could يمكن	The great wall of China could be seen from space.
must يجب أن	He mustn't be disturbed while he's sleeping.
ought to يجب أن	This lesson ought to be concentrated on.

should	يجب أن	His room should be regularly cleaned.
have to	يجب أن	The passengers' seat belts have to be fastened on a plane.
has to	يجب أن	A fine has to be paid for exceeding the speed limit.
had to	وجب أن	A visit had to be paid to the wounded soldiers.
will have to	سيجب أن	A new airport will have to be built in this area.
am to	يجب أن	I'm to be rewarded for my great efforts.
is to	يجب أن	Hany is to be punished for his bad behaviour.
are to	يجب أن	Great efforts are to be made to achieve our goals.
was to/were to	وجب أن	Many exams were to be answered before the final one.
used to	اعتاد أن	A lot of sweets used to be eaten when I was younger.
need to	ينبغي	My shoes need to be mended (mending).
seem to	يبدو	The bottles seem to be broken by the careless servant.
appear to	يبدو	The building appears to be used as a post office.
(be) going to	سوف	A bridge is going to be built here.
(be) about to	على وشك	Omar's car is about to be sold.
(be) supposed to	من المفترض	Our car is supposed to be checked before travelling.
needn't	لا داعي	These houses needn't be demolished.

ملحوظة بعض الأفعال التى يتبعها (المصدر + to) نستخدم معها (to be + p.p.) عند التحويل إلى مبنى للمجهول، ومن هذه الأفعال:

want يريد – expect يتوقع – hope يأمل – prefer يفضل

- I want the team to choose me for this competition. **(Active)**
  I want to be chosen for this competition. **(Passive)**
- I expected the teacher to punish her severely. **(Active)**
  I expected her to be severely punished. **(Passive)**

2 Passive constructions starting with It ....

We use expressions with *It* when we cannot or do not want to name the agent:

- نستخدم تعبيرات خاصة مع It عندما لا نعرف الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره، ومن هذه الأفعال:

think, believe, say, know, expect, allege, consider, agree, hope, report, predict, fear, etc.

Active : People / They think / believe / know that ....

Passive: It's thought / believed / known that ....

Examples:

Active : People think that money brings happiness.

يعتقد الناس أن المال يجلب السعادة، وهذا اعتقاد عام، وعند المبنى للمجهول يكون المعنى: يُعتقد أن المال يجلب السعادة، فتكون الجملة:

Passive: It is thought that money brings happiness.

Active : For a long time, people have believed that money brings happiness.

Passive: For a long time, it has been believed that money brings happiness.

ملحوظة لاحظ أن الجمل السابقة يمكن أن يتم تحويلها بطريقة أخرى بالبدء بفاعل الجملة الثانية؛ الفاعل بعد (that):

- People think that money brings happiness.
- Money is thought to bring happiness.
- For a long time, people have believed that money brings happiness.
- For a long time, money has been believed to bring happiness.
- The newspaper reported that our team won the final match.
- Our team was reported to have won the final match.

فى هذه الحالة نستخدم (المصدر + to) إذا كان الفعل فى الجملة الثانية مضارعًا أو مستقبلًا، ونستخدم (to have + p.p.) إذا كان الفعل فى صيغة الماضى.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The tennis match will .... next week.
a) to play b) to be played c) play d) be played

2 The parcel may not .... today.
a) to be delivered b) deliver c) be delivered d) being delivered

3 Soha should .... to stop being rude to people.
a) tell b) be told c) have told d) be telling

4 It .... that the new school should be built in the middle of the town.
a) decided b) has decided c) has been decided d) decides

5 Ali is expected .... high marks in the next exam.
a) that get b) to get c) to have got d) get

6 This cake mustn't .... outside the fridge or it will rot.
a) be leaving b) be left c) left d) leave

7 My car will .... next week by a good mechanic.
a) have repaired b) be repairing c) repair d) be repaired

8 Don't worry, this lesson can .... without attending the class.
a) be understood b) understand c) be understanding d) understands

9 It .... that the captain will get better soon.
a) hoped b) hopes c) is hoped d) is hoping

10 Some people think that happiness is .... by money.
a) bringing b) brought c) being brought d) to bring

ملاحظات

١ – إذا كانت الجملة المبنية للمعلوم منفية يجب نفى المبنى للمجهول:

- Osama didn't watch the match.
  The match wasn't watched by Osama.

٢ – إذا كانت الجملة تبدأ بـ (Nobody/No one) نحول (ever) إلى (never) إن وجدت، وفى حالة عدم وجودها ننفى بـ (not)، وتحول nobody/no one إلى anybody/any one:

- Nobody has broken the bottles.
  The bottles haven't been broken by anybody.
- Nobody has ever visited Jupiter (كوكب المشترى).
  Jupiter has never been visited by anybody.

٣ – إذا كان الفاعل غير معروف فلا نستخدم by + agent، ومن هذه الكلمات:

people, one, someone, somebody, they, he, etc.
People watch football all over the world.
Football is watched all over the world.

٤ – هناك أفعال نضع معها by + agent لبيان فاعلها، ومنها:

write/build/paint يرسم / يدهن /found يؤسس /direct يوجه /compose يؤلف موسيقى /
discover يكتشف / invent يخترع

- Oliver Twist was written by Charles Dickens.
- Alexandria was founded by Alexander the Great.
- The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.

٥- بعض الأفعال تأخذ مفعولين (عاقل/ غير عاقل) فيمكن البدء بأيهما، ولكن إذا بدأت بغير العاقل نضع قبل العاقل to/for،
ونستخدم (to) مع الأفعال الآتية:

bring	يحضر	lend	يقرض	pass	يمرر / يناول
show	يظهر / يعرض	give	يعطى	offer	يعرض
pay	يدفع	tell	يخبر	hand	يعطى / يناول
owe	يدين	sell	يبيع	write	يكتب

- نستخدم (for) مع الأفعال الآتية:

book	يحجز	call	ينادى / يتصل	find	يجد	leave	يترك
build	يبنى	cut	يقطع	get	يحصل على	make	يصنع
buy	يشترى	fetch	يذهب ليحضر	keep	يحافظ على	save	يوفر

- Father gave me the money needed. **(Active)**
  - I was given the money. **(passive)**
  - The money was given to me.
- I bought my wife a present. **(Active)**
  - My wife was bought a present. **(passive)**
  - A present was bought for my wife.

٦- بعض الأفعال المتعدية لا تحول للمبنى للمجهول وهى : have, fit, suit, etc

I have a shower every morning. (Not : ~~A shower is had by me.~~)

Extra Points

❶ يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) عند التحويل إلى المبنى للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأفعال الآتية:

(catch/arrest/damage/destroy/kill/marry/burn/beat(

- The police caught/arrested the bank robbers.
  The bank robbers got caught/arrested.

❷ فى حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (v-ing) نستخدم (being + p.p.)

- I hate people telling me lies.
  I hate being told lies.

❸ إذا كان الفاعل والمفعول واحدًا مع الفعل (let) نستخدم ضميرًا منعكسًا ثم (be) ثم (p.p.)

- He doesn't let others laugh at him.
  He doesn't let himself be laughed at.

❹ الأفعال الآتية تأخذ المصدر فى المعلوم (hear, help, see and make) ويسبق المصدر بـ to فى المجهول.

- They saw him leave the building. - He was seen to leave the building.

ولكن إذا جاء بعد hear, see, watch الفعل به ing فإن الفعل يظل كما هو به ing.

- They saw him running down the stairs. - He was seen running down the stairs.

❺ نستخدم with ثم المادة المصنوع منها الشىء أو الأداة المستخدمة أو المقادير.

- The kite was made by Omar. It was made with paper, paint and string.
- The lock was broken with a hammer. - The tiger was shot with a gun.

لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My car .... now so I need to borrow my brother's car.
a) is serviced b) was serviced
c) is being serviced d) has been serviced

2 My mother's glasses .... when my father sat on them.
a) will be broken b) were broken c) break d) to be broken

3 We always eat when the food ....
a) is prepared b) was prepared c) prepares d) prepared

4 A lot of money .... on food, medicine and education every year.
a) are spent b) were spent c) had been spent d) is spent

5 The new contract .... signed yet.
a) hasn't been b) was c) will be d) is

6 .... that there is no life on the moon.
a) Scientists have shown b) Scientists shown
c) It has shown d) Scientists showing

7 She expects to .... a promotion by her boss.
a) offer b) be offered c) be offer d) being offered

8 It .... that peace is constructive whereas war is destructive.
a) believes b) believed c) is believed d) is believing

9 The hall has .... It's a mess.
a) be tidied b) tidied c) to tidy d) to be tidied

10 The newspaper .... that a couple of men got lost in the forest.
a) has been reported b) reporting
c) has reported d) has reporting

11 The Olympic Games have never .... in Chicago up till now.
a) be held b) been held c) held d) being held

12 It .... that he will win the race.
a) is expected b) expects c) expected d) has expected

13 Don't touch the pan. Your hand might ....
a) be burning b) burning c) burn d) be burnt

14 Two teenagers .... seriously injured in a car accident last night.
a) were b) have been c) are being d) will be

15 We are going to .... a pay rise by the boss.
a) give b) be given c) be giving d) being given

16 If he weren't careful, the bike ....
a) is destroyed b) will be destroyed c) destroys d) would be destroyed

17 He didn't take part in the conference because he .... informed.
a) has been b) hadn't been c) isn't d) won't be

18 When the car is taken for a service, the oil .... and the brakes are tested.
a) changes b) was changed c) changing d) is changed

19 We hope .... an invitation to attend Ahmed's party.
a) to sending b) to be sent c) to send d) to being sent

20 Ola wants .... by someone when she paints the house.
a) to help b) to helping c) help d) to be helped

21 You must never wash food using water that .... with toxic chemicals.
a) may fill b) may be filling c) may be filled d) may filling

22 It .... that the internet can be harmful sometimes.
a) knows b) knew c) is known d) is knowing

23 We should all .... about the dangers that exist today.
a) teach b) be teaching c) teaching d) be taught

24 It .... that the waste that is put into the river is often so poisonous that it kills the fish.
a) is thought b) thinks c) is thinking d) thought

25 It .... that Egyptians treat tourists kindly and generously.
a) is believed b) is believing c) believed d) believes

26 New students should .... exactly what to do.
a) tell b) be telling c) told d) be told

27 Unfortunately, our car is badly damaged and .... repaired.
a) is b) cannot be c) can be d) cannot being

28 People must .... about the danger immediately.
a) warn b) warning c) be warned d) be warning

29 People .... that this castle was built by a great Roman emperor.
a) believe b) are believed c) were believed d) are believing

30 The tomb of the great king can still ....
a) seen b) be seen c) see d) have seen

31 Salt .... by humans many years ago instead of money.
a) used b) has been used c) was used d) is used

32 When we got home, we found that our front door .... and all our valuable things were stolen by thieves.
a) broken b) was broken c) had been broken d) broke

33 The dying woman .... at the very last moment by the paramedics.
a) rescued b) had rescued c) was rescued d) was being rescued

34 My car is not working well, it needs .... to the mechanic.
a) take b) be taken c) to be taken d) taken

35 My father's first story .... in 2000.
a) published b) was published c) is published d) has been published

36 I don't want .... any more.
a) deceive b) to be deceived c) being deceived d) to have deceived

37 William Golding .... by things he had seen during the war.
a) was shocking b) has shocked c) had shocked d) was shocked

38 I want .... everything you've heard from your boss.
a) to be telling b) to be told c) to tell d) to have told

39 While the office ...., the boss came.
a) was being cleaned b) was cleaning
c) was cleaned d) had been cleaned

40 The New Suez Canal .... a lot of people.
a) will be employing b) will be employed
c) will employ d) will employed

41 Mohammed Salah is looking forward to .... as the best player in the world.
a) choose b) choosing c) be chosen d) being chosen

42 A lot of businessmen would like .... the chance to invest in Egypt.
a) giving b) being given c) to be given d) to give

43 All people object to .... like animals.
a) be treated b) being treated c) treating d) treat

44 When did you discover that the money ....?
a) had disappeared b) had been disappeared
c) has disappeared d) was disappearing

45 We like the breakfast .... in this hotel.
a) serves b) served c) is served d) is being served

46 The tables .... before the restaurant opens tonight.
a) had been set b) will be set c) setting d) being set

47 The computer needs repairing before .... again.
a) had used b) was used c) being used d) using

48 I remember .... a nice present when I first succeeded at school.
a) he gave b) being given c) giving d) to give

49 The police say that nothing .... about the child's family.
a) has known b) known c) hasn't been known d) has been known

50 The post from South Africa .... at last.
a) has arrived b) has been arrived c) was arrived d) is arrived

2 Fill in the space:

1 An important decision ....(a)............. made by the government last night. All cars must ....(b)............. banned from the centre of town as people's health ....(c)............. being seriously affected by pollution. Only bicycles and buses will be ....(d)............. to enter the town centre. It ....(e)............. hoped that this decision will reduce pollution and therefore the problem of pollution will ....(f)............. partially solved.

2 The Pyramids ....(a)............. located in Egypt. They were ....(b)............. in the time of the Pharaohs. They ....(c)............. visited by thousands of tourists every year. They are ....(d)............. by everyone who goes there because of their elegance and greatness. The Great Pyramid ....(e)............. considered one of the wonders of the ancient world. Moreover, how they ....(f)............. built is still one of the mysteries of all times.

3 Two men were seen breaking into a house in my street last Friday. The police ....(a)............. called and they arrived very quickly. One man was ....(b)............. immediately, but the other escaped. He ....(c)............. found later in the countryside. Both men were brought to the police station ....(d)............. they were questioned separately by a police officer. The two men ....(e)............. charged with theft and they were sent ....(f)............. prison.

4 Last week, Ahmed ....(a)............. a new job in a computer company away from his home town. He has ....(b)............. there for five days now and he really enjoys the work. He found the first day difficult as he hasn't done this type of job before. At the moment, he is ....(c)............. for a house near his office. He hopes he ....(e)............. find one soon. He intends ....(d)............. move to the town ....(f)............. he works.

5 Millions of people travel to foreign countries on holidays each year. Many people go on package tours with travel companies ....(a)............. they can arrange everything for them. The company books the train, plane or bus tickets and finds them a hotel or a flat ....(b)............. summer. Many people go to places ....(c)............. the weather is better ....(d)............. in their countries. They go to the beach and swim or sunbathe. Other people travel ....(e)............. countries which have ancient monuments. There, they enjoy watching buildings which ....(f)............. built thousands of years ago.

6 Some people believe that life was much better in the old days when there were none of those inventions ....(a)............. are said to be useful but in fact mainly seem to cause us so ....(b)............. problems. Imagine life ....(c)............. the telephone! How peaceful it would be! You could have a bath without ....(d)............. interrupted by its demanding tones. Imagine life without Facebook ....(e)............. twitter. People will have time ....(f)............. talk to each other and have a lot of real friends instead of virtual ones.

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... that boy standing there a true story but he didn't believe it.
a) told b) said c) asked d) warned

2 It's .... warmer today than yesterday.
a) very b) much c) more d) many

3 They have lived in Banha .... 2001.
a) in b) for c) since d) ago

4 I was hungry, so I made .... a sandwich.
a) mine b) my c) me d) myself

5 **A:** I'm not going to work tomorrow. **B:** .... am I. I've taken the day off.
a) such b) So c) Neither d) None

6 She can't read .... write.
a) not b) but c) and d) or

7 You .... things! Please be more careful.
a) are always dropping b) always dropped
c) have always dropped d) had always dropped

8 Omar .... in Alexandria for ten years, then he moved to Assuit.
a) lived b) have lived c) live d) have been living

9 .... too many sweets is bad for your teeth.
a) Having eaten b) Eating c) Ate d) Eaten

10 .... interesting idea to visit Aswan this winter!
a) How b) What c) Which d) What an

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Making and responding to Recommendations
القيام بـ والرد على التوصية/الترشيح

- I'd suggest making unhealthy foods very expensive.
- I'd recommend making unhealthy foods very expensive.
- Why don't we make unhealthy foods very expensive?
- We might even include photos.
- We could even include photos.
- Let's include photos.
- What we should/can do is ....
- What we really should do is ....
- What we can't do is ....
- We could think about making a video.
- We should think about a video!
- We should try those two things!

Agreeing		Disagreeing
• There's a good idea.	• That's a good idea.	• I'm not sure how we'd do that.
• That's an idea.	• I like that idea.	• We can't do that.
• I'd love that idea.	• I'd like that idea.	• That wouldn't work.
• Great thinking.		

Writing: A model essay about Cholera

Water is essential to human life. However, one of the biggest problems of mankind today is the poor quality of water in many parts of the world. Water pollution can result in many diseases. One of these is cholera. It is an infectious disease that causes many serious troubles.

Cholera is most common in places with poor sanitation نظافة عامة, crowding ازدحام, war, and famine مجاعة. Vibrio cholera, the bacterium that causes cholera, is usually found in food or water contaminated from a person with the infection العدوى. It can also be caused by vegetables grown with water containing human wastes, foods and drinks sold by street

sellers or raw or undercooked fish and seafood caught in polluted water.

Symptoms أعراض of cholera can begin as soon as a few hours or as long as five days after infection. Often, symptoms are mild متوسط. But sometimes they are very serious. About one in 20 people infected have severe watery diarrhea اسهال accompanied by vomiting التقيؤ, which can quickly lead to dehydration الجفاف. Although many infected people may have minimal خفيف or no symptoms, they can still contribute يساهم to spread of the infection.

Although there is a vaccine تطعيم against cholera, the World Health Organisation doesn't normally recommend it, because it may not protect up to half of the people who receive it and it lasts only a few months. However, you can protect yourself and your family by using only water that has been boiled, water that has been chemically disinfected, or bottled water. Be sure to use the bottled, boiled, or chemically disinfected water for drinking, preparing food or drinks, making ice, brushing your teeth, washing your face and hands, washing dishes and washing fruits and vegetables.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. As food is very important for us to live, what are the best ways to eat it healthy?
2. Trees are very useful. As well as giving us food, what are their other benefits?

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Most governments put strict laws to assure food safety for their peoples. Yet, we all should be responsible for it.
2. The World Health Organisation regards clean water and food as one of the primary rights for human beings. Thus, it calls for fighting pollution.
3. The Ministry of Education must train children on food safety through social studies lessons in primary stage. This will help them in their later life.
4. Society must look after homeless children to help them have a better future. That's why most charities try to raise more money to help them.
5. The Egyptian history is full of great women who were ready to sacrifice their lives so that Egypt could get a better future.
6. Mohamed Salah's great achievements encourage young people to work harder to reach their most difficult dreams. He also gives them hope for a better future.

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب معاقبة كل المصانع التى تتلاعب بتاريخ الصلاحية على منتجات الأغذية؛ لما تمثله من خطر على الصحة.
٢- يستمتع الكثير من الشباب بالطعام السريع لطعمه الجيد غير مدركين لمدى ضرره على الصحة.
٣- يتسبب تلوث المياه فى الكثير من الأمراض الخطيرة مثل مرض الكوليرا الذى قد يؤدى للوفاة.

٤- أصبحت كرة القدم صناعة كبيرة تجذب الكثير من الاستثمارات وتدر أرباحًا أكثر من العديد من الصناعات الأخرى.
٥- تحلم جميع شعوب العالم بالسلام؛ لذا يجب أن نعمل جميعًا على إنهاء الحروب التي تنتشر في عالمنا العربي.
٦- للتليفزيون ووسائل الإعلام الأخرى أثر كبير في تشكيل اتجاهات الشباب؛ لذا يجب حسن استغلالهم لهذا الهدف.

Enrich your Vocabulary

assure	يضمن	mass media	وسائل الإعلام
attitudes	اتجاهات	primary	أساسى
homeless	مشرد	profits	الأرباح
investments	الاستثمارات	sacrifice	يضحى
manipulate	تتلاعب	strict	صارم / حازم

Test 3 Based on Unit 3

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government insists that all shops mustn't sell food later than the .... date.
   a) expiry b) production c) advertisement d) selling
2. Repairs .... to the car at the moment.
   a) are made b) are making c) will be made d) are being made
3. The .... on some clothes tell people about the way they should be washed.
   a) tickets b) rules c) cards d) labels
4. Menofia Governorate usually produces good crops as its land is ....
   a) toxic b) dangerous c) fertile d) barren
5. The house .... tomorrow.
   a) will paint b) was being painted c) is going to be painted d) is painted
6. The word "alert" is a synonym for the word ....
   a) approve b) neglect c) ignore d) warn
7. Don't worry. The mail .... in two hours.
   a) will arrive b) will be arrived c) is arrived d) is being arrived
8. Chinese food is healthy as it is usually made of natural ....
   a) ingredients b) components c) parts d) containers

9 The driver was .... for using the mobile while driving.

a) fired b) fined c) rewarded d) reviewed

10 The Amazon in Brazil is .... longest river in .... South America.

a) the / - b) - / the c) the / the d) a / the

11 It is believed that adding too many .... in our food can cause serious diseases.

a) predictions b) professionals c) preserves d) preservatives

12 Unfortunately the progress of .... leads to more pollution.

a) agriculture b) industry c) farms d) plants

13 Why did Tom keep making jokes about me? I don't enjoy ....

a) being laughed at b) laughing at c) to laugh at d) laugh at

14 I don't trust this old woman as her smile seemed rather ....

a) real b) natural c) artificial d) genuine

15 The house .... before the party.

a) had decorated b) was being decorated

c) was decorating d) had been decorated

16 It's really hard to .... your children and do the shopping.

a) behave b) manage c) raise d) educate

17 **Fill in the space:**

Do you think that electric cars will ever be used? The electric car has already ....(a)............. invented, but at the moment they are too expensive to ....(b)............. bought by most people. If electric cars were driven instead of the cars ....(c)............. are used today, the air we breathe ....(d)............. be cleaner as exhaust fumes wouldn't be pumped ....(e)............. the atmosphere. Besides, this kind of cars will be used ....(f)............. oil runs out.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Failure is probably one of the most discouraging moments in our lives. Failure should not, however, break our spirit. Instead, we should use the lesson learnt from our defeat to spur us on to greater achievements.

It is understandably humiliating to admit you have failed. Yet, this is an essential criterion to success. To overcome the main barrier to your success, you have to admit that you are not the great person you envision yourself to be. Over-confidence can easily be mistaken for confidence. There is but a thin boundary between the two. Yet, the results can be shockingly different. While one can help you achieve your goal, the other can dash your dreams to pieces.

There is, therefore, a need to be modest and unassuming. The fruits of success will be sweeter. Using confidence and knowledge, strike firmly towards your goal, and never be diverted from it by a mild success. A premature celebration can easily obscure the task to be performed.

After you have succeeded, use that confidence to improve yourself. Then personal progress can be guaranteed.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 Learning from our defeat is something good to ....
a) frustrate us
b) blame others
c) commit suicide
d) motivate us to do well

19 In order to achieve success, you should ....
a) admit your failure
b) insist on your failure
c) change your career
d) depend on all people

20 What do we need to succeed?
a) Over-confidence.
b) Confidence.
c) Failure.
d) Forgetting goals.

21 The main idea in the passage is ....
a) failure and its benefits
b) over-confidence is the key to success
c) how to achieve success
d) failure leads to success

B) Answer the following questions:

22 Mention three things a person need to achieve success.

23 What can a premature celebration do to your work?

24 Do you think that success depends on the kind of education? How can you define success?

25 **Translate into English:**

– الكتاب صديق الإنسان وهو واحد من أفضل الطرق لتوسيع المعرفة وإشباع رغبات المثقفين.

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Youth are not only the partners of today but also the leaders of tomorrow. Youth are full of energy and enthusiasm to learn, act and achieve.

27 **Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:**

1. Miracles start to happen when you give as much energy to your dreams.
2. The scientific discoveries made in any country help in its development and progress.



Unit 4

School for All

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist, listening for details
Grammar	: The past continuous and the present perfect tenses
Reading	: Reading for gist and for specific information
Critical thinking	: Understanding the problems of people who are colour-blind or have dyslexia
Functions	: Giving advice
Writing	: Writing about an interview

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة
able (adj)	قادر
colour-blind (adj)	مصاب بعمى الألوان
colour-blindness (n)	عمى الألوان
develop (v) (ed)	يطور / يتطور
development (n)	تنمية / تطور
dyslexia (n)	صعوبة القراءة
lazy (adj)	كسول

overcome (v)	يتغلب على
pass (v) (ed)	يجتاز / ينجح فى
potential (n)	مقدرة
sound (n) (v) (ed)	صوت / يبدو
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم / تأييد / يساند / يدعم
triumph (n) (v) (ed)	انتصار / ينتصر
visual (adj)	بصرى
vocational (adj)	مهنى / حرفى

Vocabulary on Listening

call (v) (ed)	يسمى / ينادى
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
important (adj)	هام
importance (n)	أهمية
intelligence (n)	ذكاء
intelligent (adj)	ذكى
map (n)	خريطة
mean (v)	يعنى / يقصد
nature (n)	الطبيعة

natural (adj)	طبيعى
physical (adj)	جسمانى / مادى
port (n)	ميناء
programme (n)	برنامج
skill (n)	مهارة
skilful (adj)	ماهر / ذو مهارة
solve (v) (d)	يحل
solution (n)	حل
suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
understand (v)	يفهم
weather (n)	طقس

Vocabulary On Reading

actually (adv)	بالفعل
amazing (adj)	مذهل
brilliant (adj)	متألق / بارع
emphasise (v) (d)	يؤكد على
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف / يخاف / يخشى
film-maker (n)	صانع (منتج) أفلام
including	متضمنًا / بما فيه
laugh at (v) (ed)	يسخر من
percent (adv)	بالمائة
prepare (v) (d)	يعد / يجهز
realise (v) (d)	يدرك
successful (adj)	ناجح
succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
success (n)	نجاح
successfully (adv)	بنجاح
university (n)	جامعة

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

address (n)	عنوان
advantage (n)	ميزة
among (prep)	بين
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار
army (n)	جيش
disability (n)	إعاقة
expert (n)	خبير
fit (adj)	لائق بدنيًا
forest (n)	غابة
grow (v)	ينمو / يكبر
illustrator (n)	رسام
jungle (n)	أدغال
maths (n)	الرياضيات
patient (adj) (n)	صبور / مريض
patience (n)	الصبر
pleased (adj)	مسرور
polite (adj)	مؤدب
possible (adj)	ممكن
prompt (n)	مثير / محفز
science (n)	مادة العلوم
sports (n)	رياضات
summary (n)	ملخص
tour guide (n)	مرشد سياحى
vet (n)	طبيب بيطرى
waiter (n)	جرسون / نادل

Focus on Vocabulary

ability	قدرة	your skill or physical power to do something
colour-blind	مصاب بعمى الألوان	not able to see the difference between particular colours
develop	يتطور	grow or change over time
dyslexia	صعوبة القراءة	a condition which causes people to have difficulty with reading and writing
lazy	كسول	describes someone who doesn't want to work or make an effort
overcome	يتغلب على	successfully deal with a problem and control it
pass	يجتاز / ينجح فى	succeed in an exam
potential	مقدرة	the ability or quality necessary for future success
sound	صوت	something that you can hear
support	دعم / مساندة	help, kindness or assistance when needed
triumph	انتصار	a great success or achievement
visual	بصرى	to do with seeing
vocational	مهنى	to do with work or a job

Expressions & Idioms

come top	يأتى فى المرتبة الأولى	make ... successful	يجعله ناجحًا
conduct a survey	يجرى دراسة/ تقييمًا	make ... useful	يجعله مفيدًا
do very well	يؤدى بشكل جيد جدًّا	of all ages	من كل الأعمار
give help and support	يوفر المساعدة والدعم	over time	بمرور الوقت
have problems reading and writing	لديه مشكلات فى القراءة والكتابة	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
make a note	يدون ملاحظة	tell the difference	يميز الفرق

Phrases & Prepositions

advantage over	ميزة على	succeed in	ينجح فى
advantage to/of	ميزة لـ	talk to	يتحدث إلى
good at	جيد فى	tell about	يخبر عن
important for	مهم لـ	useful to/for	مفيد لـ

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
ability	قدرة	capability	inability	عدم القدرة
develop	يطور	progress	decline	يتدهور
emphasise	يؤكد على	highlight	ignore	يتجاهل
lazy	كسول	apathetic	active	نشيط
overcome	يتغلب على	conquer	surrender	يستسلم
physical	جسمانى	bodily	psychological	نفسى
realise	يدرك	comprehend	misunderstand	يسىء الفهم
support	يدعم	back	discourage	يثبط العزيمة
triumph	انتصار	victory	defeat	هزيمة
visual	بصرى	optical	auditory	سمعى

Notes on Vocabulary

pass

يعطى / يناول	Can you pass me the sugar, please?
يمرر	He passed the ball to the other player who scored a goal.
ينقل معلومة	I'll pass the information on to our sales department.
يقضى (يضيع الوقت)	My little son always passes his time watching cartoons.
يجتاز (اختبارًا)	Did you pass all your exams?
تُوَرَّث	The land will pass to my son when I die.
يرفض عرضًا	I'm afraid I'll have to pass on that offer of coffee.

address title

address

١- عنوان مكان
٢- خطاب موجه لجهة أو مجموعة من الناس
٣- يخاطب (جمهورًا أو حشدًا)

- I can give you the address of a good lawyer to ask him for advice.
- The politician ended his address by asking the crowd to vote for him.
- He addressed an audience of 10,000 supporters.

title

١- عنوان (مسرحية / قصة) / عنوان فى جريدة
٢- لقب (عائلى / وظيفى)

- The title of this play is '*Othello*'.
- What's her title - is she Professor or Doctor?

illustrator photographer painter

illustrator — رسام توضيحى (يعمل فى جريدة أو مجلة)

- My uncle is an illustrator, of science fiction and adventure novels.

photographer — مصور فوتوغرافى

- The actress was surrounded by a group of admiring photographers, flashing their cameras.

painter

١- رسام (شخص يقوم برسم لوحات فنية)
٢- نقاش

- 'Mona Lisa' is considered the best piece of art that the painter Leonardo da Vinci ever had.
- We hired a good painter to paint our new flat.

another other others

another آخر (للمفرد)

- There's another news programme at ten o'clock.

another + مسافات/ كميات/ أموال/ أوقات

- I want to stay in Paris for another 3 days.
- I lent my friend another ten pounds.

other + اسم أخرى (للجمع/ اسم لا يعد)

- I suggested a camping holiday, but Omar had other ideas.

the other الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)

- You gave me only one pen, where is the other (one)?

others آخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل ووضعت «s» بعد حذف الاسم)

- One boy fell off his chair and the others laughed.

emphasising information

لتأكيد الجمل (المعلومات) يمكن استخدام المؤكدات التالية:

In truth/In fact/Actually

- It was very hot today. In fact, it was the hottest day of the year.
- The new restaurant is amazing. In truth, the food there is better than the food in my favourite restaurant.
- Hassan looks 25. Actually, he is 18.

كما يمكن استخدام (do - does - did) قبل الفعل ويأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر لتأكيده بمعنى (حقًا really)

- We do want to help all those in need.
- Manal does work hard.
- I did want to write the e-mail, but I forgot.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We'll have to wait .... three weeks for the results.

a) another b) other c) others d) the other

2 Mohamed Salah could score a good goal after the other player .... the ball to him.

a) passed on b) crossed c) passed d) went

3 The .... are painting the offices at the moment.
a) illustrators b) photographers c) drawers d) painters

4 We kept climbing but, in ...., we knew we could not reach the top of the mountain before sunset.
a) act b) truth c) doubt d) deal

5 Children need to be taught to have respect for .... people's property.
a) another b) other c) others d) the other

6 The ....'Ms' is used with a married or unmarried woman.
a) title b) address c) rank d) master

7 These photos were taken by a professional .... of nature.
a) illustrator b) photographer c) drawer d) painter

8 The President .... a news conference before leaving for Beijing yesterday.
a) addressed b) titled c) talked d) took

Listening Text



Interviewer: In yesterday's programme, I was talking to a teacher about how we learn at school. We're going to look at learning again today. With us is a professor from Cairo University, Dr Fareeda. She has given many talks about an important book. The book is about people's intelligence(1). Do you want to tell us about the book, Dr?

Dr Fareeda: Yes, I do, thank you. The book was written by an American professor. Many people have studied it since it was written in the1980s.

Interviewer: So it is still very important for us today?

Dr Fareeda: That's right. I was working in my first job as a teacher when I first read the book, and it changed the way I taught. I always called a person intelligent when they studied hard and passed(2) their exams. But the professor has taught me that people do not all learn in the same way.

Interviewer: So he thought that people were intelligent in different ways?

Dr Fareeda: That's right. He said that people could be intelligent in eight different ways. For example, some people have problems reading and writing. That does not mean they aren't intelligent. These people might be intelligent because they

(1) ذكاء

(2) اجتاز / نجح

are good with numbers. We are all different. Another kind of person is intelligent because they are good at understanding visual[3] things such as maps and pictures. And another is intelligent because they are good at understanding sounds[4] and music.

(3) بصري
(4) أصوات
(5) جراحون
(6) مهني / حرفي
(7) قدرات

Interviewer: While I was preparing for today's programme, I heard one of your talks. You said that people can be intelligent because they understand plants, animals and the weather, too. Is that right?

Dr Fareeda: Yes, that's right. Some people are intelligent because they can use their body to do things, too, for example, surgeons[5] or people learning vocational[6] skills, such as builders. Others can understand people and how they're feeling. And finally, some people are intelligent because they can understand their own abilities[7].

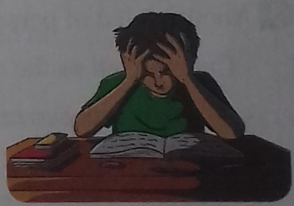
Interviewer: Have schools been wrong to teach everyone in the same way, then?

Dr Fareeda: It would be very difficult to teach everyone in a different way. However, it's important for students and teachers to remember that we're not all the same. People all learn in different ways.

Interviewer: Thank you, professor. That was very interesting.

Reading Text

Problems with learning



School is really important for all children. However, children do not all develop[1] or learn in the same way and many students have to overcome[2] problems. What is easy for most students might be a triumph[3] for others.

About ten percent of people in Egypt have something called dyslexia[4]. People with dyslexia find it very difficult to read. In the past, people thought that students with dyslexia were lazy and did not want to learn.

Other people thought that they were not intelligent. Actually, people with dyslexia are usually very intelligent in other ways. For example, they are often very good at vocational[5] skills such as fixing or making things. Some very famous people had or have dyslexia, including Albert Einstein and the film-maker Steven Spielberg. Today, special teachers can often help people with dyslexia to be very successful.

(1) يتطور
(2) يتغلب على
(3) انتصار
(4) صعوبة القراءة
(5) مهني

Another common problem is being colour-blind[6]. People who are colour-blind cannot see colours in the way that most people do. This can make it very difficult for them to read maps and traffic signs. It can also be difficult to prepare food. For example, they cannot always see when meat is cooked.

Of course colour-blind people can be very intelligent. In fact, the first person to study being colour-blind was an Englishman called John Dalton, who was born in 1794. He realised he was colour-blind when people laughed at him for wearing strange-coloured clothes. Although he could not tell the difference between blue, pink and other colours, he became a teacher and a brilliant scientist.

People are all different and have different problems in their lives. In truth, everyone has the potential[7] to do amazing things if they work hard to overcome their problems, and if they are given the right help and support[8].

(6) مصاب بعمى الألوان

(7) مقدرة

(8) دعم/ مساندة

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 Wasn't it written in the 1980s?

- استخدمت (s) مع (the) للتعبير عن العقد (عشر سنوات) بمعنى (فى الثمانينيات).

2 We usually call a person intelligent when they study hard and pass their exams.

- استخدمت جملتان فى زمن المضارع البسيط مع أداة الربط (when) للدلالة على الحقيقة الثابتة أو تكرار الفعلين.

3 Another kind of person is intelligent because ....

- Can you tell us the other four ways that people are intelligent?
- Others can understand people and how they are feeling.

- لاحظ أن (Another) جاء بعدها اسم مفرد و(other) جاء بعدها اسم جمع، أما (Others) فجاء بعدها فعل لأنها اسم وقع فاعلًا.

4 What is easy for most students might be a triumph for others.

- استخدمت (What) هنا كأداة ربط (جملة اسمية) فالجملة (What is easy for most students) هى فاعل والجملة الأخرى هى: (might be a triumph ....)

5 Another common problem is being colour-blind.

- الصيغة (is being) ليست فى زمن المضارع المستمر بل إن (being colour-blind) هى تكملة الجملة أو مفعول للفعل (is).

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Marian didn't do well at school. She was intelligent, but very ....
a) smart b) lazy c) strong d) active

2. Mohamed's brother has the .... to be a successful engineer when he finishes his study.
a) disability b) courage c) ability d) patience

3. All charitable organisations count on the .... of people to help the poor.
a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagreement

4. Knowledge in the field of medicine has been .... very quickly.
a) declining b) succeeding c) decreasing d) developing

5. My friend helped me to .... all my financial problems.
a) attract b) heal c) overcome d) cure

6. .... is a condition that makes it difficult for someone to read and spell.
a) Dyslexia b) Diabetes c) Blindness d) Amnesia

7. John Dalton wore strange clothes because he was colour- ....
a) lazy b) dumb c) deaf d) blind

8. My sister has the .... to become a good doctor; she likes helping people.
a) shape b) potential c) courage d) energy

9. The naughty boy was highly ...., but he disliked studying.
a) stupid b) active c) intelligent d) effective

10. The Concord was a plane that could travel faster than the speed of ....
a) sound b) air c) wind d) voice

11. My friend will be in the school team if he .... the fitness test today.
a) manages b) succeeds c) passes d) gets

12. People with reading problems can be good at .... subjects such as making and fixing things.
a) vocational b) vacationer c) academic d) literary

13. Teachers have been using .... aids such as maps and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
a) virtual b) imaginary c) habitual d) visual

14. It was very hot today. ...., it was the hottest day of the year.
a) In fact b) However c) In addition to d) Despite

15 Winning the tennis championship was the player's personal .... of the year.
a) triumph b) competition c) race d) award

16 Scientists .... the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a) completed b) compared c) conducted d) coded

17 All players in the team need to work on their .... fitness.
a) spiritual b) partial c) mental d) physical

18 Most jobs today require computer and language ....
a) skills b) skulls c) powers d) energies

19 The painters couldn't paint the outside of the house because of the bad ....
a) climate b) atmosphere c) weather d) pressure

20 The teacher spoke slowly and clearly so that everyone could .... the lesson.
a) realise b) understand c) talk d) listen

21 I need to talk to the person who .... designed this system.
a) actually b) falsely c) quickly d) uselessly

22 The boy's hands were shaking with .... when he saw the lion.
a) fire b) cold c) heat d) fear

23 The price of a room in this hotel is 300 pounds .... breakfast.
a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing

24 It took us only a short time to .... our mistakes, so we corrected them.
a) recognise b) consist c) realise d) indicate

25 Scientists hope they will .... in finding a cure for all diseases.
a) success b) successful c) successfully d) succeed

26 It is not polite to laugh .... other people's mistakes.
a) at b) on c) for d) to

27 Nour always feels relaxed .... her friends.
a) between b) among c) next d) behind

28 Dr Farouk El Baz is the world's greatest .... of remote sensing.
a) indicator b) explorer c) export d) expert

29 Wafaa is very .... with the children, so I advise her to work as a teacher.
a) furious b) lazy c) patient d) nervous

30 A/An .... is someone whose job is to draw pictures for books or magazines
a) painter b) illustrator c) photographer d) inventor

31 This charity collects money to help children with .... or problems.
a) disabilities b) abilities c) potentials d) skills

32 Mohamed's mother always .... him her love and support.
a) does b) makes c) requests d) gives

33 The shelf under the desk is useful .... storing CDs.
a) in b) at c) for d) with

34 My cousin can't really .... the difference between pink and blue.
a) explain b) tell c) watch d) describe

35 This new printer has several advantages .... other old printers.
a) over b) of c) with d) to

36 Winning the game yesterday was important .... our local team.
a) at b) in c) over d) to

37 Kenzy is much cleverer than all the .... children in her class.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

38 The teacher's help and care .... the girl successful in her studies.
a) did b) performed c) made d) established

39 All students should be encouraged to take part in a ....
a) class b) practice c) lab d) sport

40 A .... must know how the animal's body works and really likes animals.
a) vet b) scientist c) patient d) secretary

41 Thirty people .... five children were killed in the accident.
a) involving b) enclosing c) consisting d) including

42 Earthquakes and volcanoes are .... disasters that can't be controlled.
a) natural b) ordinary c) strange d) normal

43 Messi is one of the most .... footballers in the world today.
a) vague b) brilliant c) infamous d) lazy

44 I can send the report to you by e-mail if you give me your e-mail ....
a) address b) headline c) title d) list

45 My grandfather served in the .... during the 6th October War.
a) army b) office c) league d) arm

46 We had a party when my son .... top of his school.
a) went b) arrived c) came d) climbed

47 The people of many countries are .... badly because of wars.
a) rejoicing b) offering c) celebrating d) suffering

48 Schools should do more to .... children for the world of work.
a) make b) prepare c) recommend d) advise

49 At the end of the news, they often give you a .... of the main stories.
a) summary b) research c) theory d) document

50 It is believed that the Egyptian doctors have become real .... on liver diseases.
a) experienced b) experts c) imports d) exports

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The word "victory" is similar in meaning to the word ".................".
a) defeat b) patience c) courage d) triumph

2 The opposite of the word "develop" is ".................".
a) decline b) progress c) increase d) evolve

3 My father always advises me to do my work to the best of my ....
a) result b) disability c) ability d) intention

4 We .... some old negatives from my parents' wedding day.
a) took b) painted c) designed d) developed

5 You need a security .... to enter the building as it is run by the army.
a) cross b) system c) facility d) pass

6 It .... like the kid has got a sore throat. We must see a doctor immediately
a) appears b) disappears c) sounds d) affects

7 Because of pollution, this lake is now too acid to .... fish.
a) support b) hunt c) catch d) poison

8 It is believed that the development of artificial .... will be a breakthrough of this century.
a) ability b) intelligence c) potential d) quality

9 Saline .... is a mixture of salt and water which has many medical uses.
a) transmits b) transports c) solution d) deduces

10 The new company wants to reach as many .... customers as possible.
a) potential b) ability c) able d) affecting

Grammar

1 Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Form: التكوين	Subj. + was/were + v-ing • I was studying English all night yesterday.
Negative: النفى	Subj. + wasn't/weren't + v-ing • I wasn't reading when the light went out.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	(Question word) was/were + subj. + v-ing? • What were you doing when I phoned you?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + was/were + being + v-ing • The lunch was being cooked when Ali came.

Usage الاستخدام

a) For an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past.
يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.

▸ At 7 p.m. yesterday, they were waiting for Ola's arrival at the airport.

b) For an action which was in progress when another action interrupted it.
يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير).
الحدث الطويل يوضع (ماضيًا مستمرًا) والحدث القصير يوضع (ماضيًا بسيطًا).

▸ He was driving fast when he ran into اصطدم بـ a big tree.

c) For two actions happening at the same time.
يعبر عن حدثين استمرا فى وقت واحد.

▸ Osama was playing games on his computer while Ramy was watching TV.

d) The past continuous is used with the following time expressions:
يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية:

when, while, as, all day/night/morning, etc.

While / When / As/Just as + past continuous (ماضٍ مستمر) , past simple (ماضٍ بسيط)

past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) while / when / as/just as past continuous (ماضٍ مستمر)

لاحظ أنه يمكن وضع الماضى المستمر أو البسيط بعد when على حسب معنى الجملة أيهما مستمر وأيهما قاطع:

- She was cleaning the room when she found her ring.
- When she was cleaning the room, she found her ring.

ولكى تصل إلى إتقان هذا الزمن لا بد أن تعلم أن الحدث المستمر يوضع (ماضيًا مستمرًا) والحدث القاطع يوضع (ماضيًا بسيطًا).

Extra Points

1. While + past simple (was/were), past simple.
   لا يمكن استخدام being بعد were أو was لأنها فعل لا يستخدم فى الاستمرار.
   - While I was ill, many people visited me.
2. While + (v-ing) إذا لم يوجد فاعل
   - While walking in the street, she met her old classmate.
3. During + noun = while + past cont.
   - During his stay in London, he met many famous people.

الأخطاء الشائعة

يقع كثير من الطلاب فى خطأ شائع عند استخدام الماضى المستمر إذ إنهم ينسون إضافة was/were قبل الفعل، وهذا غير صحيح؛ إذ إن الماضى المستمر يتكون من was/were + v-ing:

- I ~~playing~~ tennis all day yesterday. ✗
- I was playing tennis all day yesterday. ✓ ماضٍ مستمر

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona .... a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang.
   a) is having b) having c) was having d) has
2. My friend .... when we arrived at the station.
   a) was waiting b) waited c) had waited d) waiting
3. When he was carrying a suitcase, he .... it on his foot.
   a) was dropping b) dropped c) has dropped d) drops
4. While I was doing the homework, my mother .... our dinner.
   a) prepare b) prepares c) was preparing d) will prepare
5. We .... dinner when you phoned, so we couldn't answer the phone.
   a) have b) had had c) was having d) were having
6. I .... tennis at three o'clock yesterday afternoon.
   a) had played b) am playing c) was playing d) played
7. I was doing my homework while my brother .... TV.
   a) had watched b) was watching c) watching d) watched
8. My mother was cooking dinner when I .... home.
   a) was arrived b) had arrived c) was arriving d) arrived
9. During his sleep last night, someone .... into his house.
   a) broke b) was breaking c) had broken d) breaking
10. .... her stay in London, she learned English.
   a) While b) As soon as c) During d) Since

2 Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Form: التكوين	Subj. + have/has + P.P.	• They are happy. They've won the cup.
Negative: النفي	Subj. + haven't/hasn't + P.P.	• They haven't left the stadium yet.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	(Question word) have/has + subj. + P.P.? • Have you met Magdy?	• What has Karam lost?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + have/has + been + P.P.	• My car has just been repaired.

Usage الاستخدام

a) For an action which began in the past and continues up to the present. يعبر عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى وما زال مستمرًا حتى الآن.

- He has been a teacher for 20 years. (He is still working as a teacher.)

b) For an action which has recently finished and whose result is visible in the present. يستخدم لحدث انتهى قريبًا ونتيجته واضحة فى الحاضر.

- The players are happy because they have won the cup.

c) For an action which happened at an unknown time in the past. يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى وقت غير معروف فى الماضى (التركيز يكون على الحدث، ووقت الحدث ليس مهمًا).

- Omar has been to Paris four times. (لم نذكر متى حدث الفعل فالمهم هنا الحدث)

d) We use the present perfect to talk about past experiences.

- I have read more than 100 novels but I have never read plays or poems.

- The present perfect is used with the following time expressions.

- for, since, already, yet, just, ever, never, so far, up till now, lately, recently, how long, over the years, etc.

Key Words		Examples
already	بالفعل	• She has already fed the baby.
just	حالًا	• I have just come back from my holiday.
ever	من قبل / أبدًا	• Have you ever played hockey? • This is the most expensive car I've ever bought.
never	مطلقًا / أبدًا	• They have never visited Luxor.
yet	حتى الآن (النفى / السؤال)	• I haven't finished breakfast yet. • Has your course started yet?
so far/up till now	حتى الآن	• What have you done so far?
lately/recently	حديثًا	• Have you bought any shirts recently/lately?
over	على مر (السنين)	• Egypt has changed over the last 5 years.
How long ......?		• How long has he had that camera?
for (duration مدة)		• I haven't seen Mohammed for five years.
since (starting point نقطة بداية)		• She hasn't visited us since October.

Since & For

Since	For
+ ماضٍ بسيط he left school.	a day/a month/a year
Friday/Monday أيام	weeks/months/years
June/April شهور	several days/weeks/years
2000 سنوات	2 hours
2 o'clock ساعات	ages
+ عبارة اسمية his childhood	a long time
last week/last year	the last (period of time) week/year
then منذ ذلك الحين (بدل الماضي البسيط)	

have gone (to)/ have been (to)

have been to ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه.

- He has been to Cairo.
- Ahmed, where have you been?

have gone to ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد أو فى الطريق إلى هناك.

- They have gone to school.
- Where has Omar gone? I can't find him.

لاحظ الآتى:

1. Subject + last + past simple + when + past simple

- I last ate fish when I visited my uncle in Benha.

لتحويل الجمل التى بها last إلى since نفى المضارع التام.

- I haven't eaten fish since I visited my uncle in Alexandria.

ويمكن تحويل الماضى البسيط للمضارع التام مع ملاحظة الإثبات والنفى.

- I last caught fish when I was in Hurghada.
- I haven't caught any fish since I was in Hurghada.

2. The last time + subj. + past simple + مدة + ago (was in + سنة)

- The last time Ali played football was 8 years ago / in 2010.
- Ali hasn't played football since 2010 / for 9 years.

3. It's + مدة + since + subj .+ last + past simple

- It's 6 years since I last saw Rania.
- I haven't seen Rania since 2012 / for 7 years.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Where is Mai? B: She .... to the shops. She will be back soon.
   a) has gone b) has been c) goes d) is going
2. My brother has .... joined the football club.
   a) ever b) yet c) just d) since
3. I .... a break since this morning.
   a) haven't b) had c) am not having d) haven't had
4. I don't need to wash my car. My brother .... it for me already.
   a) had washed b) is washing c) has washed d) washes
5. She hasn't written to me .... she travelled.
   a) yet b) ever c) for d) since
6. Hams .... to the club with her friends, but she came really early today.
   a) has gone b) has been c) had been d) had gone
7. She is angry because she .... her phone in a taxi.
   a) left b) has left c) had left d) was leaving
8. They've been in London .... six months.
   a) for b) since c) in d) during
9. I .... my keys, can you help me look for them?
   a) had lost b) was losing c) have lost d) have been lost
10. Since 2000, I .... in a small house near Cairo.
   a) lived b) have lived c) had lived d) was lived

Extra Points

1. "already" at the end of the question.

تستخدم already فى آخر السؤال للتعبير عن الدهشة من سرعة حدوث الفعل.

- Have you finished already? It's too early.

2. "never" with comparative adjectives and "ever" with superlative ones.

تستخدم never مع صفات المقارنة و ever مع التفضيل. (سيعاد الشرح بالتفصيل فى الوحدة السادسة)

- I've never met a taller boy than Othman.
- Othman is the tallest boy I've ever met.

3. With expressions such as: This is the first time/It's the second time.

- This is the first time Alaa has visited a European country.

4. With words and expressions such as: today/this morning/evening/week/month, etc.

يستخدم مع الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة إذا كانت هذه الفترات الزمنية مستمرة إلى لحظة الكلام.

- He has received 3 faxes this morning. (هذا الصباح لم ينته فلربما يتسلم فاكسات أخرى)

5. The present perfect and the present perfect continuous.

قد يستخدم المضارع التام والتام المستمر لبيان حدث بدأ فى الماضى وما زال مستمرًا ولكن الأفعال الآتية لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار فنستخدم معها المضارع التام فقط.

like, dislike, hate, enjoy, love, prefer, believe, think, notice, remember, understand, realise, seem, know, see, hear, feel, taste, look, smell, sound, be, contain, fit, include, belong, own, want, mean, appear, have, cost, owe, need, surprise

- He has owned this car for 5 years. He doesn't intend to sell it.
- I have had this camera since I got married. It's still in a good condition.

لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The garden is dirty because people .... litter everywhere.
a) have left b) left c) are left d) had left

2 I was so tired last night that I fell asleep while I .... a film on TV.
a) am watching b) was watching c) watch d) watched

3 Look what you ....! How can we clean the floor now?
a) will do b) has done c) have done d) had done

4 I .... Ahmed for five years now. He is my best friend.
a) have been knowing b) know
c) knew d) have known

5 .... the flight, a passenger threatened to hijack the plane.
a) While b) During c) As d) For

6 A: Where ...., Ahmed?
B: I've been searching for you for an hour.
a) have you been b) have you gone c) you went d) are you going

7 While .... the tree, I fell down.
a) climb b) climbed c) climbing d) was climbing

8 I .... three cups of tea so far.
a) have drunk b) have been drinking c) drank d) drink

9 .... my stay in France, I lived with a French family.
a) While b) During c) Just as d) After

10 Sara hasn't played tennis .... a week.
a) since b) yet c) for d) from

11 How many times .... to you since he travelled abroad?
a) has he written b) does he write c) did he write d) is he writing

12 What .... when the accident happened?
a) have you done b) are you doing c) were you doing d) had you done

13 We have known each other .... our childhood.
a) ago b) for c) from d) since

14 A: Would you like to borrow this book? B: No, thanks. I .... it.
a) have already read b) have never read c) just read d) am reading

15 Eman has lived in Cairo .... the last twenty years.
a) from b) ago c) since d) for

16 I .... to be a doctor since I was ten.
a) have wanted b) wanted c) wanting d) was wanting

17 I am trying to be healthy. I .... ice cream for one month.
a) hadn't eaten b) wasn't eating c) have been eaten d) haven't eaten

18 I .... in Cairo for ten years. I'm still living there.
a) had lived b) lived c) have lived d) living

19 Yasmine .... her homework yet. She is still doing it.
a) has finished b) finished c) was finishing d) hasn't finished

20 I have been to London, but I .... to Paris.
a) have never been b) have ever been c) have gone d) went

21 Ali is happy because he .... his exam.
a) passes b) had passed c) has passed d) is passing

22 In yesterday's programme, I .... to a teacher about how we learn at school.
a) have talked b) talking c) will talk d) was talking

23 Many people have studied this book since it .... in the 1980s.
a) has written b) was written c) wrote d) writing

24 While I .... for today's programme, I heard one of your talks.
a) was preparing b) prepared c) have prepared d) preparing

25 This is the best book I ....
a) have never read b) was reading c) have ever read d) am reading

26 Ahmed's uncle was selling fruit in the market yesterday. He .... there for ten years.
a) has worked b) working c) work d) is worked

27 We .... a meeting at work when suddenly all the office lights went out.
a) having b) was having c) were having d) have had

28 What .... at five o'clock yesterday afternoon?
a) have you done b) you were doing c) are you doing d) were you doing

29 Hala was using her new camera yesterday. She .... 300 photos with it.
a) has yet taken b) has already taken c) taking d) takes

30 Fawzi .... to Luxor but he has never been to Aswan.
a) has been b) has gone c) going d) was being

31 What exams .... you passed?
a) are b) did c) have d) might

32 I .... working with my company but now I want to look for another job.
a) was enjoying b) have enjoyed c) enjoying d) enjoyed to

33 This is the first time I have .... known such a clever girl.
a) ever b) just c) never d) yet

34 Hassan couldn't answer the phone because he .... his father's car.
a) had been driving b) has been driving c) was driving d) is driving

35 He has been learning how to practise the guitar .... the age of six.
a) for b) since c) while d) at

36 What .... when I phoned you? You seemed very busy.
a) were you doing b) did you do c) had you done d) have you done

37 Since I .... my friend in Luxor, I haven't seen him again.
a) met b) have met c) am meeting d) meets

38 While .... the news, my mother was cooking.
a) watch b) watched c) watching d) was watching

39 It's years since we .... football together.
a) played b) have played c) play d) have been playing

40 The man .... on his phone when his car hit the tree.
a) has talked b) was talking c) had talked d) is talking

41 .... he graduated, he hasn't found a suitable job.
a) For b) While c) When d) Since

42 I .... with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.
a) was shopping b) shopping c) had shopped d) shopped

43 The girl was playing the piano and .... softly to herself.
a) sang b) had sung c) was sung d) singing

44 While I was driving this morning, I .... about what you had said.
a) thought b) was thinking c) being thought d) have thought

45 I .... this nice pot of tea. Would you like a cup?
a) had just made b) am going to make c) have just made d) will make

46 Just as he .... on his way home, it suddenly started to rain.
a) was b) was being c) had been d) has been

47 While riding through the forest, he .... off his horse.
a) had fallen b) was falling c) fell d) felled

48 How many friends .... up till now?
a) have you been making
b) are you making
c) did you make
d) have you made

49 Have you written all the reports ....? You are a good one.
a) just now
b) already
c) yet
d) so far

50 During their stay in England, they visited Liverpool team which was .... in 1892.
a) finding
b) found
c) founded
d) being found

2 Fill in the space:

1 Hossam has ....(a)............. in England for 6 months. He hasn't written to his parents ....(b)............. 3 weeks. He ....(c)............. had a lot of exams lately. He ....(d)............. sat for three final exams so far this week. Next week he is taking maths and history tests. His teachers are always ....(e)............. him lots of homework. He knows they only have wanted ....(f)............. help him!

2 I have ....(a)............. a lot of problems at home lately. I ....(b)............. already bought a new washing machine. Since I ....(c)............. it, I have had nothing but troubles. I called the company last Monday and they promised ....(e)............. send a technician soon, but the technician hasn't come ....(d)............. . So, I have to do all the washing ....(f)............. hand.

3 My son left school last year and he ....(a)............. found a job yet, so he is trying to improve his English nowadays. He has ....(b)............. doing a course in English for three months. He thinks he has ....(c)............. quite a lot of progress. Apart ....(d)............. studying English, his other main interest is sport, especially swimming. He ....(e)............. won several cups for swimming over the last two years. I always tell him that sport will help him improve now and ....(f)............. the future.

4 It ....(a)............. predicted that policing in the future will ....(b)............. much more different than it is today. Advances ....(c)............. technology— particularly in computers, television, and communication—will assist the police in solving and preventing crimes. Modern cameras ....(d)............. are installed everywhere will help the police a lot. Moreover, some companies ....(e)............. working on robots which will act as policemen. All of these changes ....(f)............. be for the better if they help to improve the quality of police service.

5 If you do want to ....(a)............ swimming, you should take the following precautions. First, try to avoid swimming ....(b)............ ten in the morning and two in the afternoon. These are the times when the sun is ....(c)............ strongest. It may also ....(d)............ a good idea to apply a sun protection lotion when you go out in the sun. Remember ....(e)............ apply it to your body except ....(f)............ your eyes.

6 Charles Dickens, ...(a)............ wrote *Oliver Twist* and *David Copperfield*, ...(b)............ born to a poor family. His father was always ....(c)............ debt, and when Charles was twelve, his father was ....(d)............ to prison for failing to pay his debts. Charles had ....(e)............ work in a London factory to feed himself and his family. There, he lived ....(f)............ poor people and knew about their suffering and hard life.

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Her basket was filled .... groceries.
a) in b) for c) by d) with

2 Don't just sit there in silence; .... something.
a) say b) speak c) talk d) tell

3 Jehan .... on taking a taxi to the airport.
a) warned b) suggested c) insisted d) advised

4 The dentist .... me to brush my teeth twice a day.
a) permitted b) advised c) suggested d) complained

5 Do they sell .... clothes here?
a) childrens' b) childrens c) childrens's d) children's

6 Yasmine said she .... ill the previous week.
a) would be b) had been c) will be d) has been

7 We donated some money to a charity that helps .... homeless.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

8 Even though he suffers from sea sickness, he was made .... in the navy.
a) to serve b) serving c) served d) had served

9 The beautiful building was designed .... an Egyptian architect.
a) of b) with c) from d) by

10 You .... collect me from the bus stop. I can take a taxi home.
a) don't have b) needn't c) mustn't d) couldn't

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

1 Asking for and giving Advice

طلب وإعطاء النصيحة

Asking for Advice	Giving Advice
• Can you give me some advice about ....?	• I advise you to ....
• Can I ask your advice about ....?	• I really would/wouldn't ...
• What do you think about ....?	• If you ask me, you should/shouldn't ...
• What would you do about ....?	• If I were you, I would/wouldn't ...
	• In my opinion, you should/shouldn't ...
	• Why don't you ....?

2 Responding to Advice

الرد على النصيحة

Accepting	Refusing
• Yes, you're right.	• I don't want to do that.
• Yes, I know I should./I shouldn't.	• I don't really think so.
• That's a great idea.	• Absolutely not./Certainly not.
• Why didn't I think of that?	• I'm not sure about that I'll think about it.

Writing: A short report about an interview

• **Tips for writing a short report about an interview:**

1. Interview four people in your class about what they are good at and what they like doing.
2. Make notes of their answers.
3. Give advice to each of the four people, saying which job they would be good at.
4. Think about why they would be good at this job.

A Model Report

I interviewed four people in my class for a survey. In the interview I asked them what they were good at and what they liked doing.

The first one told me that he was good with numbers and he enjoyed maths very much. So I advised him to work as an accountant. So, he had to join the Faculty of Commerce.

The second one told me that he was very fit and he liked being outside. He said that he didn't want to work in an office and he liked working with children. I advised him to work as a sports teacher. So, I advised him to join the Faculty of Physical Education.

The third one told me that he was not very good at maths or English, but he was very good with his hands. He said that he was good at repairing things. I advised him to work in a vocational job and he should join a technical school.

The last one said that he liked science and he enjoyed finding out how the body works. He also said that he liked working outside and he really liked animals. I advised him to work as a vet and that he should go to a Veterinary Surgeon Faculty.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1 "How can schools help students with learning problems?"

2 "Illiteracy and poverty are two serious problems. What can we do to solve them?"

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Howard Gardner was the first scientist to talk about multiple intelligences in his book "Frames of Mind" in 1983. It has been a certified educational method.
2. Learning problems happen because of the way the brain takes in and processes information. That's why it's important to understand how it works.
3. Parents can help children with learning disabilities achieve success by encouraging their strengths and knowing their weaknesses.
4. School plays an important role in teaching young people the values of discipline, hard work and teamwork. These are best acquired at an early age.
5. Disabled people may amaze ordinary ones by marvellous things they themselves can't achieve. They can even score amazing records.
6. Achieving good economic developments requires good planning and caring about scientific progress. Hence, governments should invest in scientific institutions.

B) Translate into English:

١- يمكن أن يتغلب الأطفال ذوو صعوبات التعلم على مشكلاتهم إذا وفرنا لهم المساعدة والدعم.

٢- علينا اكتشاف نوع الذكاء الذى يتميز به أبناؤنا حتى نساعدهم على النجاح فى التعليم وفى الحياة.

٣- يجب أن يختار كل شخص الوظيفة التى تناسب مهاراته والقدرات التى يتميز بها.

٤- لم تمنع صعوبات التعلم بعض المشاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واستثمار قدراتهم ومواهبهم.

٥- تمثل الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم عوائق التنمية فى المجتمع؛ لذا تعمل الحكومة على البحث عن حلول مناسبة لهذه المشكلة.

٦- يتضمن إصلاح التعليم طرقًا جديدة لدمج الأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة مع زملائهم بنفس المناهج التعليمية.

Enrich your Vocabulary

certified	موثوق فيها	over population	الزيادة السكانية
combine	لدمج	reform	إصلاح
discipline	الانضباط	strengths	نقاط القوة
institutions	مؤسسات	syllabuses	المناهج
marvellous	رائع / مميز	talents	مواهبهم
multiple	متعدد	weaknesses	نقاط الضعف
obstacles	عوائق		

Test 4 Based on Unit 4

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Al Ahly fans always .... their team whether they play inside or outside Egypt.
a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagree

2 The .... report says that it will remain cool for the rest of the week.
a) climate b) atmosphere c) weather d) wind

3 My father always .... me the right help when I need it.
a) does b) makes c) requests d) gives

4 Special teachers can help children who have .... to discover their abilities.
a) dyslexia b) diabetes c) blindness d) amnesia

5 All the fans are in the streets celebrating the .... of their team of the championship.
a) award b) competition c) race d) triumph

6 Ali could hardly find .... place to spend the summer holiday.
a) others b) other c) another d) else

7 The student joined a .... school as he is good at learning manual things such as fixing things.
a) vocational b) virtual c) academic d) medical

8 The family members were .... by fumes from the fire and had to be carried out of their houses.
a) beaten b) won c) overcome d) gained

9 It's incorrect to .... people by their first names at these formal events.
a) attract b) address c) title d) attain

10 Wax .... from solid to liquid when you heat it.
a) passes b) crosses c) exchanges d) develops

11 .... I was sleeping, I had a terrible dream.
a) After b) When c) Because d) During

12 Mr Salah retired last March and I .... him since then.
a) haven't seen b) didn't see c) saw d) hadn't seen

13 I haven't played football .... I was young.
a) while b) when c) for d) since

14 He has .... seen his friends; he saw them half an hour ago.
a) ever b) never c) just d) yet

15 While the food ...., we smelt something burning.
a) was cooking b) was being cooked c) cooking d) cooked

16 I didn't realise that my father came since I .... the match.
a) watched b) have watched c) watch d) was watching

17 **Fill in the space:**

The first modern Olympics ....(a)............. held in Athens in 1896. ....(b)............. then, nations from around the world have been meeting ....(c)............. four years to compete against one another. New Olympic records are set every time they meet. The only exception was in 1944, when the Olympic Games were not held ....(d)............. of the Second War. The next Olympics ....(e)............. be held in Tokyo. It .... (f)............. expected that they will be one of the best Games ever.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence of sport — the pursuit of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hope, dreams and reputation.

A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention "Argentina or Brazil" to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skillful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 According to the passage, the United States ....
a) has begun to give much attention to football
b) is fond of playing football
c) has won the football World Cup
d) is getting sick of football

19 In the second paragraph, the word "summit" means the ....
a) highest point
b) mountain top
c) award
d) summary

20 According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will ....
a) fail to succeed
b) be successful
c) lose enjoyment
d) be irrational

21 What is the author's attitude towards international games?
a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.
b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.
c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.
d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world-famous in many ways.

B) Answer the following questions:

22 What can "Winning an international game" do to the winning country?

23 What did the Scots do for the sake of their country?

24 How do you think international games can help solve many global problems?

25 **Translate into English:**

– السلام والوئام هما لبنات بناء أى مجتمع. فقط إذا كان هناك سلام ووئام فى البلاد فسيكون هناك نمو وتطور.

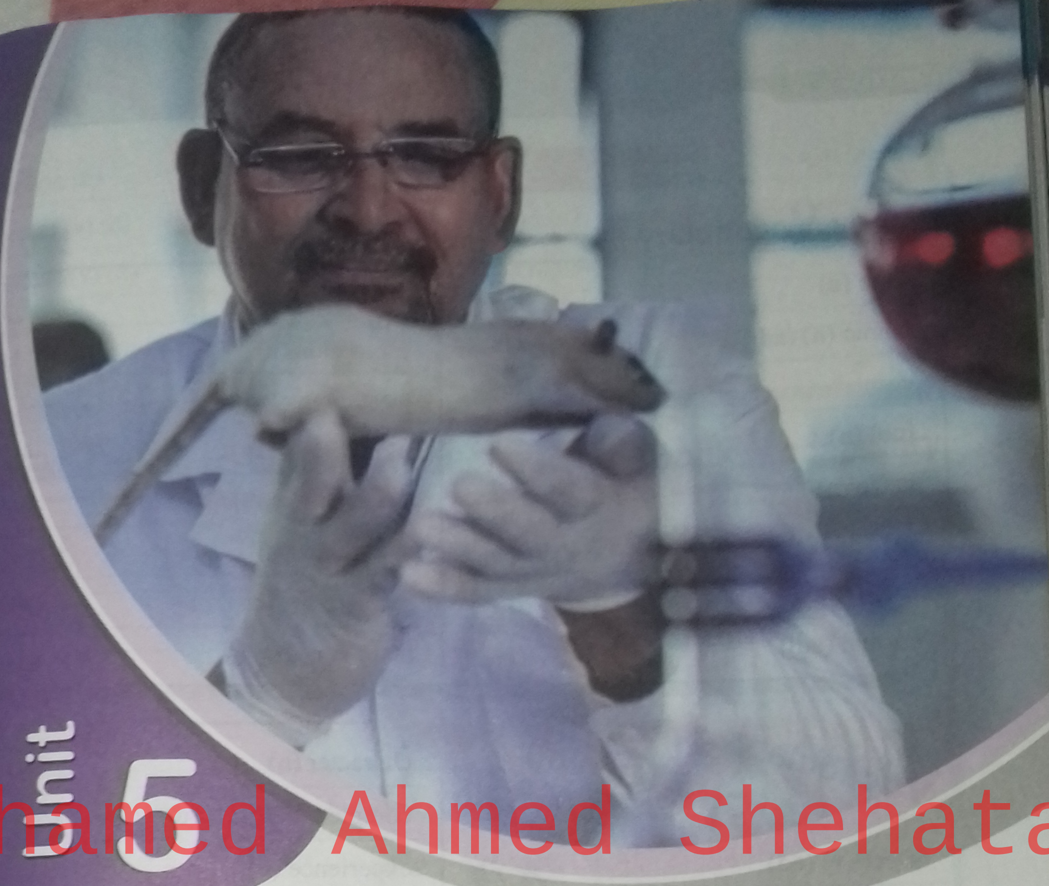
26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Nobody is born perfect or ideal. Both parents and teachers need to put in efforts to bring out the hidden potential in a child.

27 **Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:**

1. "Both water and electricity are essential to our lives."
2. "A true friendship is the most beautiful blessing from Allah which is needed to be treated and nourished like any priceless thing in life."

Unit 5



Daniel Keyes: *Flowers for Algernon*

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist and for specific information
Grammar	: "used to" and "didn't use to"
Reading	: Reading for gist and for detail
Critical thinking	: Understanding the problems of scientific research
Functions	: Giving a talk
Writing	: Writing a text about a writer

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cage (n)	قفص
comic (n) (adj)	مجلة هزلية / كوميدى
comedy (n)	كوميديا
fool (n)	شخص أحمق
maze (n)	متاهة
navy (n)	البحرية / الأسطول
naval (adj)	بحرى
normal (adj)	طبيعى
promote (v) (d)	يُرقِّى
promotion (n)	ترقية
psychology (n)	علم النفس
psychologist (n)	عالم نفس
psychological (adj)	نفسى
spare time (n)	وقت الفراغ
spare (adj)	احتياطى
tease (v) (d)	يغيظ / يسخر من

Vocabulary on Listening

affect (v) (ed)	يؤثر على
effect (n)	تأثير
author (n)	مؤلف
bakery (n)	مخبز
baker (n)	خباز
character (n)	شخصية
complete (adj) (v) (d)	كامل / يكمل
experience (n)	تجربة / خبرة
notice (v) (d) (n)	يلاحظ / ملاحظة
primary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية
secondary school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية
treat (v) (ed)	يعامل / يعالج

Vocabulary on Reading

adults (n)	راشدون / بالغون
amount (n)	مقدار / كمية
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ
delighted (adj)	مسرور
experiment (n)	تجربة علمية
find out (v) found	يكتشف / يعرف
increase (v) (d)	يزيد
laboratory (n)	معمل

meeting (n)	مقابلة / اجتماع	return (v) (ed)	يرجع / يعود
operate (v) (d)	يجرى عملية	second (n)	ثانية
produce (v) (d)	ينتج	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
product (n)	منتج	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
progress (n)	تَقدُم	sweep (v) swept	يكنس

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

article (n)	مقال	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا (جمع)	message (n)	رسالة
bacterium (n)	بكتير (مفرد)	mice (n)	فئران
cell (n)	خلية	mistake (n)	خطأ
control (n) (v) (led)	يتحكم فى / تحكم	price (n)	سعر
data (n)	بيانات	products (n)	منتجات
datum (n)	بيان / معلومة	punctuation (n)	علامات ترقيم
draft (n)	مسودة	relatives (n)	أقارب
else (adv)	آخر	safety (n)	أمان
exciting (adj)	مثير / رائع	share (v) (d)	يشارك
genes (n)	جينات	temperature (n)	درجة حرارة
grandparents (n)	أجداد	test (v) (ed)	يختبر
human (n)	بشرى / إنسان	vaccination (n)	تطعيم
include (v) (d)	يشرك / يضمن	win (v)	يفوز

Focus on Vocabulary

cage	قفص	a container for animals that's made of wire or metal bars
comic	مجلة هزلية	a magazine that tells stories with pictures
fool	شخص أحمق	someone who doesn't behave in an intelligent way
maze	متاهة	a series of paths and fences designed as a puzzle
navy	البحرية	a country's armed forces at sea
normal	طبيعي	describes something that's typical, usual, as expected
promote	يرقى	give someone a better job or a higher rank
psychology	علم النفس	the scientific study of the human mind
spare time	وقت الفراغ	the time when you can do what you like
tease	يغيظ / يسخر من	make fun of someone or to provoke them in an amusing way

Expressions & Idioms

died aged	مات في سن	have an operation	تجرى له عملية
do jobs	يقوم بالأعمال	make you think	تجعلك تفكر
get lost	يضل الطريق	of the same name	بنفس الاسم

Phrases & Prepositions

cruel to	قاسٍ مع	return to	يرجع إلى
delighted with	مسرور بـ	sort of	نوع من
operate on	يجرى عملية لـ	start by	يبدأ بـ
refer to	يشير الى	talk about	يتحدث عن

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
comedy	كوميديا	humour	tragedy	مَأساة
fool	أحمق	idiot	genius	عبقرى
normal	طبيعى	ordinary	extraordinary	مميز
promote	يرقى	elevate	denounce	يقلل من قدر
spare	فراغ/احتياطى	free	necessary	ضرورى
tease	يغيظ/يسخر من	mock	praise	يمدح
cruel	قاسٍ	merciless	gentle/merciful	لطيف/رحيم
produce	ينتج	manufacture	consume	يستهلك
inherit	يرث	obtain	lose	يخسر

Notes on Vocabulary

meeting **conference** **interview** **appointment**

meeting اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)
- The staff are having a meeting next week to discuss the company's problems.

conference مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)
- The Arab Summit Conference is held in March every year.

interview مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة/ صحافة/ إذاعة)

- Mary has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris.
- A famous reporter is having an interview with the president tonight.

appointment موعد (مع صديق/ طبيب)

- I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor.

else

else

١- آخر/ أيضًا (تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ (some - any - every - no)

- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well.
- I'll give you the report but don't tell anybody else.
- He is awake now, like everyone else.

٢- آخر/ أيضًا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)

- Who else was at the party yesterday?
- What else would you like to buy?

win beat earn gain

win يفوز بـ (مباراة/ جائزة/ مسابقة)

- It's supposed to be easier to win your home games.
- How does it feel to have won the gold medal?

beat يهزم/ يتغلب على

- I always beat my friend at tennis; he gets annoyed.

earn يكسب (مالًا عن طريق العمل غالبًا)

- She was earning good money during her work at the bank.

gain يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)

- In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.

لاحظ: gain (speed - weight)

- I have gained a lot of weight because of eating fast food.

Irregular Plural Nouns

تجمع بعض الأسماء جمعًا شاذًا مثل:

shelf →	shelves	half →	halves	wife →	wives
bacterium →	bacteria	foot →	feet	woman →	women
datum →	data	mouse →	mice	oasis →	oases
sheep →	sheep	tooth →	teeth	ox →	oxen

As

تستخدم (as) بمعانٍ واستخدامات مختلفة.

- As I was walking home, I saw an accident. — تستخدم بمعنى (بينما) وقد يسبقها (just).
- He came first in the test as he studied very hard. — تستخدم بمعنى لأن.
- My uncle works as an engineer in a famous factory. — تستخدم بمعنى (كـ) وتعبر عن الحقيقة.
- As your teacher, I advise you to study hard.

share **divide**

share

١- يشارك (شيئًا مع شخص آخر بدون تقسيم).
٢- يتشارك/ يوزع (شيئًا) بين مجموعة من الأشخاص.
٣- يشارك رأيًا/ شعورًا/ خبرة أو اعتقادًا.

- The three passengers shared a taxi as they don't have enough money.
- They shared the cake between them.
- Would you like to share your feelings with the group?

divide

١- يقسم إلى جزأين أو أكثر.
٢- يجرى عملية القسمة (فى الرياضيات)

- The book is divided into six sections.
- If you divide 21 by 3, you get 7.

temperature **heat**

temperature

درجة الحرارة (قياس الحرارة بدرجات حسب مستوى محدد)

- Water boils at a temperature of 100°C.

heat

١- حرارة (ارتفاع درجة الحرارة عن المعتاد)
٢- مصدر الحرارة

- Firefighters were driven back by the heat of the fire.
- When the milk comes to the boil, turn off the heat.

do/ perform an operation **have an operation**

do/ perform an operation

يقوم بعملية جراحية (الطبيب/ الجراح)

- Dr Magdy Yaccoub did a lot of heart transplant operations all over the world.

have an operation

تجرى له عملية جراحية (المريض)

- The player had an operation in his leg just after the match.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An international medical .... was established for the interchange of new ideas concepts.
   a) meeting b) conference c) interview d) appointment
2. Go and play somewhere .... I'm trying to work.
   a) else b) another c) other d) also
3. With the new players, our local team will be a tough team to ....
   a) win b) beat c) earn d) gain
4. Yesterday the club manager chose Mr. Cobber .... the team's new captain.
   a) like b) such as c) as d) for
5. Mother told me to turn off the .... when the water starts to boil.
   a) temperature b) cold c) conditioning d) heat
6. We don't have enough books, so you'll have to ....
   a) share b) divide c) spill d) unite
7. The surgeon has .... this simple operation hundreds of times.
   a) done b) had c) made d) carried
8. .... it was getting late, I decided to book into a hotel.
   a) Although b) Like c) As d) However

Listening Text



Journalist: In today's programme, we're talking about the author Daniel Keyes, who wrote the story *Flowers for Algernon*. With me today is Professor Higgins from Manchester University. So, professor, what can you tell us about Daniel Keyes as a boy?

Professor : Daniel Keyes was born in New York in 1927. As a boy, he used to work in a bakery(1) from four until seven in the morning, before he went to school. You will notice that the main character(2) in *Flowers for Algernon also* works in a bakery.

(1) مخبز
(2) شخصية

Journalist: That's interesting. What did he do when he finished school?

Professor : After school, he spent some time in the navy(3) and then studied psychology(4) at university. Many of his novels are also about psychology. For example, *Flowers for Algernon* asks the question: how does your intelligence affect your character and how people treat(5) you?

(3) البحرية
(4) علم النفس
(5) يعامل
(6) وقت الفراغ
(7) مجلات هزلية (كوميدية)

Journalist: Did he use to write novels at university?

Professor : No, he didn't. After university, he taught English at a secondary school. He also taught students who found it very difficult to read. This was another experience he used in *Flowers for Algernon*. The main character also goes to a school because he cannot read.

Journalist: So when did he start writing stories?

Professor : While he was a teacher, he also used to write in his spare time(6). *Flowers for Algernon* was published as a short story in a magazine in 1959. He later wrote it as a complete novel in 1960.

Journalist: Was it successful?

Professor : It was very successful. It was also made into a film called Charlie in 1968. The story also became a television film and a play.

Journalist: Did he write any other novels?

Professor : Yes. Eight of his books were published but none of them was as successful as *Flowers for Algernon*. When he was younger, he also used to write comics(7), although he didn't use to use his own name in the comics: he called himself Kris Daniels. He died in 2014 aged 86.

Journalist: Thank you, professor.

Reading Text

Flowers for Algernon



Charlie Gordon was 32 and worked in a bakery in New York. The manager promoted[1] him because he was clever. Charlie had found out how to increase the amount of bread that the bakery produced.

Charlie had worked at the bakery for a long time. When he first started there, the other workers always talked to him, but now they didn't. Why was this? A few weeks earlier, Charlie had been very different. The workers used to tease[2] him because they knew that he was not clever. He used to sweep the floor and do the jobs that nobody else wanted to do. People had always laughed at Charlie because they thought that he was a fool[3], but he did not use to realise that they were often cruel[4] to him. Now, however, he understood what they said to him. Why had he changed?

Charlie had always wanted to be clever. A few months before, Charlie had started going to a special school for adults[5] after work. One day, the teacher at the school told him about Dr Strauss and Professor Nemur. The teacher said that they could help him learn even more.

The next day, Charlie visited Dr Strauss and Professor Nemur. They said that they wanted to use him in an experiment to become clever.

They took Charlie to a laboratory where scientists asked him to find the way through a maze[6]. It was too difficult for Charlie. The scientists then showed him a mouse called Algernon. They put Algernon in the maze and the mouse ran through it in just a few seconds. Dr Strauss said that Algernon used to be a normal[7] mouse. Then they did an operation on it and it became very clever. They wanted to do the same operation on Charlie. He agreed.

After the operation, Charlie slowly became more and more intelligent. Dr Strauss and Professor Nemur were delighted with his progress[8]. They took him to a meeting with other scientists in a different city, but Charlie now understood more about science than they did. He was angry with the men. He realised that they were treating him like a laboratory animal, so he took Algernon from its cage[9] and returned to New York.

At home, Charlie began to study Algernon carefully. He realised that the mouse was not clever any more. It had become a normal mouse again. Would the same thing happen to him?

(1) يرقى
(2) يغيظ/يسخر من
(3) شخص أحمق
(4) قاسٍ
(5) الكبار/البالغون
(6) متاهة
(7) طبيعي
(8) تقدم
(9) قفص

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 As a boy, he used to work in a bakery from four until seven in the morning before he went to school.

– تستخدم (until) كحرف جر يأتى بعدها اسم أو (verb + ing)

– لاحظ عدم استخدام ماضٍ تام قبل (before)؛ لعدم ضرورة ذلك بل استخدمت (used to) التى تساوى الماضى البسيط.

2 While he was a teacher, he also used to write in his spare time.

– لم يستخدم بعد (while) زمن ماضٍ مستمر؛ لأن الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة هو (verb to be)

3 He later wrote it as a complete novel in 1960.

He realised that they were treating him like a laboratory animal, ...

– الكلمتان (as - like) هنا بمعنى (كـ) لكن (as) تستخدم للحقيقة أو الواقع، بينما تستخدم (like) للتشبيه

4 It was too difficult for Charlie.

– تستخدم (too) قبل الصفة بمعنى (للغاية/ أكثر من اللازم) أما اذا أضيفت إليها (to) فتكون بمعنى (جدًّا لدرجة ألّا).

The maze was too difficult for Charlie to go through.

5 He realised that the mouse was not clever anymore.

– تستخدم (anymore/any longer) بمعنى (لم يعد/ بعد الآن) ولكن يسبقهما نفى، أما إذا لم يسبقهما نفى فنستخدم (no more/no longer)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In my .... time, I go for walks by the Nile with my friends.
a) engaged b) occupied c) busy d) spare

2 A .... is a magazine that tells a funny story using pictures.
a) comic b) tragedy c) drama d) symphony

3 People always laughed at Charlie because they thought that he was a ....
a) genius b) thinker c) fool d) sailor

4 Charlie started going to a special school for .... after finishing work in the bakery.
a) babies b) adults c) teenagers d) children

5 The old part of the town was like a .... of narrow passages. It's difficult to find your way through.
a) maze b) cage c) mall d) maize

6 Ali invited his family for dinner in a restaurant as he was .... in the company.
a) fired b) dismissed c) fined d) promoted

7 Our teacher told us that the .... temperature of the human body is 37°C.
a) dangerous b) normal c) artificial d) industrial

8 The zoo was suddenly closed because a tiger escaped from its ....
a) box b) fence c) cage d) room
9 Sami's sisters used to .... him because he was very fat.
a) reward b) congratulate c) astonish d) tease
10 My brother dreams of joining the .... to serve his country and travels at sea.
a) university b) navy c) college d) department
11 .... is the study of the mind and how it affects behaviour.
a) Biology b) Physiology c) Anatomy d) Psychology
12 This is the most exciting .... novel I have ever read. I couldn't stop laughing.
a) comic b) tragic c) historical d) serious
13 The village has been badly .... by pollution in the river.
a) attracted b) rewarded c) affected d) developed
14 A .... is a place where bread and cakes are made or sold.
a) market b) grocer c) station d) bakery
15 Charlie Gordon is the main .... in the story Flowers for Algernon.
a) member b) character c) organ d) author
16 I .... that the children were unusually quiet during dinner.
a) deduced b) complained c) noticed d) annoyed
17 My son always says he wishes I would stop .... him like a child.
a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting
18 Many people think that keeping animals in cages is ....
a) natural b) human c) cruel d) useless
19 The world population .... greatly in the second half of the twentieth century.
a) reduced b) increased c) employed d) rejected
20 The medical company uses animals in .... tests for some of its drugs.
a) laboratory b) school c) monthly d) driving
21 You must take your map otherwise you might .... lost in the forest.
a) grow b) fall c) get d) turn
22 Scientists have made great .... in all fields during the last few years.
a) progress b) decrease c) increase d) excitement
23 My friend Yasser decided to .... home soon after the match ended.
a) stay b) return c) remain d) become
24 The cleaner's work consisted mainly of making coffee and .... the floor.
a) washing b) installing c) sweeping d) intending
25 .... are very small living things, some of which cause illness or disease.
a) Genes b) Vaccines c) Bacteria d) Vases
26 The boy listened excitedly to his .... telling him about his father's childhood.
a) grandparents b) grandchildren c) ancestors d) speakers

27 This section of the hypermarket sells meat .... like hot dogs and burgers.
a) examples b) goods c) items d) products

28 My friend sent me a text .... telling me that he would be late for the meeting.
a) message b) massage c) passage d) messenger

29 Most medicines that we use today were .... on animals first.
a) devised b) designed c) discovered d) tested

30 Babies in most countries are given free .... against certain diseases.
a) genes b) vaccinations c) viruses d) devices

31 The writer has been writing .... for Al Ahram Newspaper for many years now.
a) advertisements b) documents c) articles d) papers

32 The police was asking the thief all sorts .... questions about his partners.
a) of b) for c) at d) about

33 We should teach our children to learn from their ....
a) rights b) corrections c) mistakes d) behaviours

34 I do my work in an office that I .... with some other teachers.
a) divide b) build c) design d) share

35 The .... of the water was just right for swimming.
a) temperature b) heat c) cold d) strength

36 You've .... fantastic jobs of painting and decorating the room.
a) made b) done c) behaved d) devised

37 The minister referred .... the subject several times during her speech.
a) for b) in c) of d) to

38 You mustn't tell anyone .... – it's a secret between you and me.
a) other b) else c) another d) also

39 All staff members are expected to attend the next important .... about the company's future.
a) view b) interview c) meeting d) appointment

40 Every driver must keep a .... tyre in case another one gets damaged.
a) spare b) free c) flat d) busy

41 Leila .... her friend Mariam like one of the family.
a) cured b) healed c) treated d) advised

42 Computers are very useful as they can store a vast .... of information.
a) account b) quality c) weight d) amount

43 The audience was clearly delighted .... the performance of the actors.
a) in b) with c) of d) for

44 Children cannot enter this art museum without being with a/an ....
a) apart b) infant c) adult d) friend

45 This serious film .... you think about children's problems in poor countries.
a) does b) makes c) performs d) operated

46 Although he practised hard, he couldn't .... the race, but came fourth.
a) win b) beat c) earn d) gain

47 The footballer had to .... an operation in his knee, but he is getting better.
a) do b) perform c) have d) act

48 The new owner of the company .... the business from his father.
a) adverted b) advertised c) invented d) inherited

49 Bacteria and viruses are too small for the .... eye to see.
a) humane b) human c) artificial d) ordinary

50 The university scientists had to analyse the .... they collected after the experiments well.
a) symbols b) reasons c) amounts d) data

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The word "idiot" is a synonym of the word ....
a) genius b) scholar c) character d) fool

2 The verb "praise" is an antonym of the verb ....
a) tease b) promote c) produce d) inherit

3 You must learn to find your way through the menu .... before you can use the program efficiently.
a) way b) maze c) method d) route

4 All governments should play a more effective role in .... human rights.
a) denouncing b) consuming c) promoting d) declining

5 Dad would go .... if he found out that we took his car while he was asleep.
a) engaged b) spare c) free d) occupied

6 My friend Youssef is nobody's .... when it comes to money.
a) idiot b) comedy c) fool d) genius

7 There is increased demand for organic .... because it is healthier than inorganic one.
a) produce b) consumption c) claim d) product

8 Residents object to the new factory as they want to preserve the .... of their neighbourhoods.
a) personality b) character c) direction d) assumption

9 I didn't buy the shirt because it was only available in .... blue, or brown. I really like light colours.
a) army b) fleet c) fashionable d) navy

10 A lecture was in .... in the main hall when the bomb exploded.
a) advance b) detail c) progress d) a hurry

Grammar

Used to اعتاد أن

Used to: الاستخدام	Subj. + used to + inf. • When I was young, I used to drink much tea.
Negative: النفى	Subj. + didn't use to + inf. • They didn't use to sleep late. Subj. + never used to + inf. • He never used to come early.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Did + subj. + use to ....? • Did he use to get up early?

Usage الاستخدام

١- تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث فى الوقت الحاضر.

- My father used to drive me to school when I was young.
- Osama used to drink a lot of coffee but now he doesn't.

٢- تستخدم للتعبير عن أنه كان من العادة عدم فعل شيء فى الماضى ولكنه يحدث الآن.

- We didn't use to have mobile phones in the past.

٣- لا فرق فى استخدام الماضى البسيط أو used to عند التعبير عن عادات الماضى.

- In the past, people used to travel/travelled on camels.

٤- نستخدم used to للعادة فى الماضى البعيد وليس أمس أو الأسبوع الماضى.

- I used to walk to school when I was young.
- We went to the museum twice last month. "~~used to go~~"

٥- نستخدم used to لعادات الماضى، ونستخدم المضارع البسيط لعادات المضارع.

- We used to go out for a walk, but now we stay at home.

لاحظ هناك بعض الكلمات من الأزمنة الأخرى تساوى استخدام used to مثل:

no longer, no more/don't, doesn't .... anymore/any longer

- He no longer walks to school. هذا يعنى أنه كان من عادته السير إلى المدرسة.
- He doesn't walk to school anymore.

- Subj. + used to + inf. ...... but now + negative (present simple)
- Subj. + no longer + positive (present simple).
- Subj. + negative (present simple) + anymore.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Did your mother .... before she had children?
a) use to work b) use to working c) used to work d) worked

2 When I was young, I .... live in a small flat, but now I live in a villa.
a) 'm used to b) used to c) use to d) 'm used

3 When I was a child, I .... eat meat, but I eat it now.
a) use to b) am not used to c) didn't use to d) used to

4 100 years ago, we didn't have planes so people .... by sea or land.
a) travelled b) use to travel c) didn't use to travel d) travel

5 I used to have a bicycle, but now I ....
a) don't b) didn't c) am not d) haven't

6 I .... to the club when I was young.
a) used to going b) used to go c) used to went d) am used to going

7 When I was young, I was thin but now I ....
a) haven't b) am not c) didn't d) don't

8 Mr Hamdy .... help his sons with the work, but now he helps them a lot.
a) didn't used to b) didn't use to c) is using d) is used to

9 Osama .... up early.
a) no longer gets b) no longer get c) is no longer get d) no longer got

10 Did you .... watch TV when you were young?
a) use to b) used to c) use d) using to

Extra Points

be/get used to

Be (am/is/are) used to + v-ing or noun/pronoun
get used to + v-ing or noun/pronoun

تعبر be (get)+ used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة فى الماضى وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

- (Be (get) used to) means 'be accustomed to', 'be in the habit of'.
- Ahmed is used to getting up early every day.
- Primary school students are used to learning through games.
- Omar didn't like milk but now he gets used to it.
- Driving an automatic car is something new for you, but you will get used to it. I'm sure.

Obj. + (be) used to + inf./for + v-ing يستخدم لـ (المبنى للمجهول)

إذا جاء قبل be used to المفعول به فيأتى بعدها المصدر وتكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول وفى هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

- Planes, trains, cars and buses are used to carry people to their destinations.
- Water is used for generating electricity.

لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... like fish, but I never eat it now.
a) use to b) am used to c) used to d) didn't use to

2 Where did you .... buy your food before the supermarket was built?
a) used to b) using to c) use d) use to

3 Lots of trains .... stop here, but not many do now.
a) didn't used to b) didn't use c) using to d) used to

4 Although my father was a farmer, I .... help in the farm work.
a) used to b) use to c) didn't use to d) am used to

5 When we were children, mother .... us a bedtime story.
a) used to read b) uses to read c) was reading d) no longer reads

6 I used to travel around the country, but now I ....
a) don't b) didn't c) am not d) haven't

7 I don't mind going to school on foot. I .... walking long distances.
a) was used to b) 'm used to c) didn't use to d) used to

8 When I was young, I .... in Aswan, but now I live in Cairo.
a) used to live b) use to live c) live d) am used to living

9 I .... TV every day, but now I only watch it once or twice a week.
a) watch b) am watching c) have watched d) used to watch

10 She .... going to bed early when she was young.
a) no longer likes b) uses to like
c) didn't use to like d) likes

11 I can't take your old car. I .... driving an automatic one.
a) used to b) am used to c) 'm using d) didn't use to

12 When I was a child, I used to .... of being an astronaut.
a) dreaming b) getting dream c) dream d) dreamt

13 We didn't .... have computers. Now we can't do without it.
a) use to b) used to c) using to d) be used to

14 She .... gets up early; so don't phone her before 10 o'clock.
a) frequently b) always c) anymore d) no longer

15 I'm terribly nervous, I'm not used to .... to a large audience.
a) speaking b) spoke c) being spoken d) speaks

16 I didn't use to .... glasses when I was young.
a) wear b) wore c) being worn d) wearing

17 After her husband died, the old woman had to get used to .... on her own.
a) live b) lived c) living d) leaves

18 .... the mobile phone used for chatting?
a) Is b) Did c) Does d) Has

19 People used to walk or travel by horse and carriage, but now they .... by car or bus.
a) travel b) travelled c) travelling d) used to travel

20 He didn't use to have a television, but now he .... two televisions.
a) used to have b) has c) have d) is having

21 As a boy, Daniel Keyes .... in a bakery from four until seven in the morning.
a) works b) uses to work
c) used to work d) is used to working

22 John .... a ten-year-old small car, but now he drives a new big one.
a) used to driving b) used to drive c) is used to driving d) uses to drive

23 Daniel Keyes .... write his own name in the comics.
a) didn't use to b) hadn't used to c) aren't using to d) wasn't used to

24 He .... his car himself, but now he takes his car to the best garage in town.
a) repairs b) use to repair
c) used to repairing d) used to repair

25 He .... camping for holidays, but now he stays in the best hotels.
a) going b) used to go c) use to go d) is used to going

26 I .... with my toys when I was young. I no longer do this now.
a) didn't use to play b) used to play
c) 'm used to playing d) use to play

27 My uncle used to be a taxi driver, but now he ....
a) isn't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) wasn't

28 She .... like tennis. She likes it now.
a) isn't used to b) didn't use to c) used to d) was used to

29 Did your grandfather .... work in a bank?
a) used to b) uses to c) using to d) use to

30 In the past, people in England .... gas for light instead of electricity.
a) had used b) were using c) used to use d) use to use

31 A knife is used to .... things like meat and cheese.
a) cutting b) have cut c) cuts d) cut

32 She wasn't used to living by the sea, but she .... it now.
a) used to b) is used to c) uses d) is using

33 Since his wife's death, he still .... got used to living on his own.
a) hasn't b) doesn't c) isn't d) didn't

34 When I was on holiday, I .... to the beach and swam in the sea every day.
a) used to go b) went
c) 'm used to going d) was used to going

35 You .... to getting up early once you start working.
a) used b) are used c) will get used d) were used

36 It wasn't our habit to have air conditioning, but now we .... it.
a) used to b) are used to c) are using to d) aren't used to

37 I .... to the cinema four times last month.
a) went b) used to go c) were going d) had gone

38 I used to have long hair when I was young, but now I ....
a) didn't b) haven't c) don't d) am not

39 On my birthday, my friends used to visit and .... me presents.
a) given b) are used to giving c) gave d) give

40 Wood is used to .... furniture as it is cheaper than other materials.
a) making b) make c) be making d) being made

2 Fill in the space:

1 In prehistoric times, people ....(a)............. to live in caves. They used ....(b)............. hunt animals which they used for food and clothing. They didn't ....(c)............. to depend on others. They made everything by ....(d)............., and they led very simple lives. They ....(e)............. used to have cars as they ....(f)............. invented then.

2 Many years ago, women didn't ....(a)............. to wear trousers and men's clothes never ....(b)............. to come in bright colours. They ....(c)............. use blue jeans as business clothes or wear tracksuits when they travelled. People used ....(d)............. dress in special ways for different situations. Fashion used to ....(e)............. much simpler. I'm still not used to buying green jeans and ....(f)............. them to work.

3 Today, the mobile phone ....(a)............. become popular to most people since it is very convenient. The most advantage of ....(b)............. a mobile phone is that you can communicate ....(c)............. your family and your friends no matter ....(d)............. you are. Moreover, you can relax with mobile phone's applications, for example, play games, listen ....(e)............. music, or chat with ....(f)............. friends.

4 Many people cannot do ....(a)............. the computer these days. The computer gives us access ....(b)............. a wide range of information and enables us to 'talk' to people from ....(c)............. over the world ....(d)............. any time of the day. It ....(e)............. help all sectors in society if it is ....(f)............. used.

5 An ideal student is the one ....(a)............. is good in academics as well as in activities. An ideal student does not give ....(b)............. even when the times get tough. Parents ....(c)............. understand that their child cannot attain excellence on his own. He needs ....(d)............. support. The ideal student has ....(e)............. time to spare as time is gold. He ....(f)............. always helpful to all his friends.

6 Football game is very useful ....(a)............. all of us if played regularly. It benefits us in many ways. It is an interesting outdoor game ....(b)............. by two teams having 11 players in each. It is a game of good physical exercise ....(c)............. teaches players about harmony, discipline and sportsmanship. It is a popular game all over ....(d)............. world. It has ....(e)............. played for years in various cities and towns of many countries. People can't imagine the world ....(f)............. football.

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By tonight, Khalid .... his science project.
   a) will finish b) will be finished c) will be finishing d) will have finished
2. I'd love .... at a nice restaurant tonight.
   a) to eat b) eating c) to be eaten d) to have eaten
3. My wife had finished cleaning the house .... I arrived.
   a) as soon as b) until c) by the time d) after
4. The team .... Saturday's match if they had played better.
   a) wouldn't lose b) wouldn't have lost c) didn't lose d) hadn't lost
5. The teacher doesn't allow .... in class.
   a) talking b) to talk c) talk d) to be talked
6. Tamer is sleeping. He .... be tired.
   a) shall b) might c) will d) should
7. The baby was covered .... a blanket because he felt very cold.
   a) to b) at c) for d) with
8. Kamal doesn't like .... what to do.
   a) be told b) telling c) being told d) to tell
9. It was .... good film that we saw it twice.
   a) such a b) such c) so d) enough
10. Your hair needs ...., it's very long.
   a) cut b) to cut c) cutting d) to be cutting

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Giving a talk إلقاء خطبة/حديث

- Hello, and welcome to my talk about ....
- I'm delighted that you have come to my talk about ....
- I'm going to start by talking about ....
- In the next part of my talk, I'll tell you about ....
- I'll finish by telling you about ....
- To conclude, ...

Writing: A Famous Writer

- **You are going to talk about a famous writer. Choose a writer you like and make notes to answer these questions.**
  a) What is the writer's name and nationality?
  b) Is he or she living now?
  c) If the answer to b is No, when and where did the writer use to live?
  d) What is the writer's most famous book?
  e) What is this book about?
  f) What else did this person write?
  g) What do you like about this writer?
- **Tips for writing a biographical essay:**
  1. Make sure you use the suitable tense.
  2. Put the incidents in the right order.
  3. Consider the rules of punctuation.

A model essay about Naguib Mahfouz

Naguib Mahfouz was the only Egyptian and Arab writer who won the Nobel Prize for Literature. He is regarded as one of the first contemporary معاصر writers of Arabic literature. He published 34 novels, over 350 short stories, a lot of movie scripts سيناريو, and five plays over a 70-year career. Many of his works have been made into Egyptian and foreign films.

Naguib Mahfouz, was born in Cairo in 1911. He Mahfouz came from a middle-class طبقة متوسطة family in Cairo, the youngest of seven children. He began writing when he was only 17. He studied philosophy الفلسفة at Cairo University and graduated in 1945. He got a job in the Ministry of Culture وزارة الثقافة, where he stayed until 1972. Naguib Mahfouz wrote different kinds of novels but he was famous for his novels about Egyptian society and culture like Awlad Haretna, Al Thoulathia and Zokak El Madaq.

Many people like Naguib Magfouz's novels because of his simple style that many people can understand easily. I really admire him for that and for his courage شجاعة in life. He proved that through his behaviour against many threats تهديدات of killing he received and after a failure trial محاولة to kill him from terrorists الإرهابيين. Finally, he wrote for Al Ahram for many years and continued meeting his friends and common people in cafés and clubs. He received many honours of Arab and foreign governments in his life. He died in Cairo in 2006.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. Many people think that we shouldn't use animals in scientific experiments. Do you agree? Why? Why not?
2. Our duty towards the people with special needs (the disabled).

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Writers are all affected by the experiences they have in their life and the problems they face. Their works are the mirror of their age.
2. All over the world, there is a great debate whether we should use animals in scientific research or not.
3. Our deserts are one of our chief sources of wealth which we should give due care. In this way they will add much to the economy.
4. The United Nations regards using humans in laboratory experiments an offensive crime. It is also one of the most important medical ethics.
5. Flowers for Algernon is considered a psychological novel. That's because it deals with human nature and the effects of science on it.
6. The media play an important role in forming opinion and effective awareness in our country. Therefore, they should be used well.

B) Translate into English:

١- يزخر التاريخ بالكثير من الكتاب العرب الذين أثروا الأدب العالمى مثل نجيب محفوظ وطه حسين.
٢- يؤمن بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود لذلك أحيانًا ما يقومون بتجارب خطيرة على البشر.
٣- يعتقد الكثيرون أنه لو لم نستخدم الحيوانات فى التجارب لما كان لدينا الكثير من الأدوية التى تنقذ حياة الناس.
٤- كلما تقدم العلم والتكنولوجيا زادت المشكلات النفسية التى يتناولها الكتاب فى قصصهم.
٥- يجب أن يهدف التعليم إلى تنمية مهارات الطلاب وإعدادهم لتلبية سوق العمل فى ظل التطور التكنولوجى المتزايد.
٦- تحذر وسائل الإعلام الشباب من الهجرة غير الشرعية إلى أوروبا لأنها قد تؤدى إلى فقدانهم حياتهم.

Enrich your Vocabulary

aim	يهدف	illegal	غير الشرعية
awareness	الوعى	immigration	الهجرة
crime	جريمة	limits	حدود
debate	جدل	mirror	مرآة
ethics	أخلاقيات	sources	مصادر

Test 5 Based on Unit 5

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Waleed's parents thought he was a .... for leaving his job in spite of its good salary.
a) genius b) thinker c) fool d) smart

2 The noise doesn't bother me. I .... to it.
a) am used b) used c) use d) am using

3 Since I left school, my parents have started .... me as an adult.
a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting

4 It's .... for students to feel nervous before an exam.
a) strange b) normal c) artificial d) industrial

5 I .... to school every day now as a kind of exercise.
a) am used to walk b) am used to walking c) used to walk d) am walking

6 Before we do anything ...., we must sit down and make a list.
a) other b) else c) another d) also

7 There .... a petrol station here, but they knocked it down.
a) used to be b) didn't use to be c) never used to be d) is used to be

8 The bird flew out of its .... when I forgot to close it.
a) box b) fence c) cage d) room

9 The manager was so pleased with Charlie that he decided to .... him.
a) fire b) dismiss c) fine d) promote

10 He .... enjoy staying at home but now he does.
a) did use to b) didn't used to c) didn't use to d) used to

11 The United Nations spends much money to provide free .... for children in poor countries.
a) genes b) vaccinations c) viruses d) devices

12 He never used to have any guests, but now he .... a party every weekend.
a) doesn't have b) does c) have d) has

13 The word 'mock' is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) reward b) award c) honour d) tease

14 The song is intended to provide some .... relief from the intensity of the film scenes.
a) comic b) tragic c) honorary d) applying

15 He .... out and visiting his friends.
a) used to go b) is used to go c) is used to going d) didn't use to go

16 Because of the new prices, car sales are still below .... for the time of year.
a) standard b) natural c) normal d) abnormal

17 Fill in the space:

Egypt ....(a)............. a lot of fascinating monuments. Last week, we visited Aswan ....(b)............. the High Dam was built. The weather there ....(c)............. so nice that we stayed three days and ....(d)............. many places of interest. My friends and I ....(e)............. a good time and enjoyed ....(f)............. a lot. I'm looking forward to going there again someday!

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Obesity is one of the greatest public health challenges of the 21st century. Its prevalence has tripled in many countries of the World Health Organisation since the 1980s, and the numbers of those affected continue to rise at an alarming rate. In addition to causing various physical disabilities and psychological problems, excess weight drastically increases a person's risk of developing a number of non-communicable diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer and diabetes.

Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat, defined by genetic and environmental factors that are difficult to control when dieting. Obesity is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater. BMI is a tool used to measure obesity.

There are many causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity. The Centers for Disease Control has identified these three as the main causes to the complexity of the obesity epidemic.

In today's fast-paced environment, it is easy to adopt unhealthy behaviours. Behaviour, in the case of obesity, relates to food choices, amount of physical activity you get and the effort to maintain your health.

Environment plays a key role in shaping an individual's habits and lifestyle. There are many environmental influences that can impact your health decisions. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.

Science shows that genetics play a role in obesity. Genes can cause certain disorders which result in obesity. However, not all individuals who are predisposed to obesity become affected by obesity. Research is currently underway to determine which genes contribute most to obesity.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 The main idea in the passage is ....
a) the dangers of obesity in the poor countries
b) how can the rich countries solve the problem of obesity
c) the advantages and disadvantages of obesity
d) obesity and our health

19 Obesity has increased .... since 1980s in many European countries.
a) three times b) twice c) four times d) once

20 Which of the following ideas is not mentioned in the passage?
a) Food choices, amount of physical activity are causes of obesity.
b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
c) Sedentary lifestyle is one of the causes of obesity.
d) Scientists don't know which genes are responsible for obesity.

21 What does the underlined word "epidemic" mean?
a) Decrease. b) Control. c) Health. d) Outbreak.

B) Answer the following questions:

22 Explain how obesity is defined and classified.

23 Infer the causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Mention two.

24 Do you think that people can overcome obesity and have a good health especially in this technological age? If yes, how?

25 Translate into English:

- يعد تلوث الهواء من أخطر المشكلات فى الوقت الحالى فى جميع أنحاء العالم وخاصة فى المدن الكبيرة بسبب المستوى الكبير للتصنيع.

26 Translate into Arabic:

Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way.

27 Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:

1. "Everyone should understand the importance of water in our life and the problem faced during scarcity of water."
2. "The reasons for happiness differ from person to person."



Unit 6

That's Amazing

Objectives

- Listening : Listening for gist and specific information
- Grammar : Comparative and superlative forms
- Reading : Reading for gist and distinguishing fact from opinion
- Critical thinking : Understanding the importance of motivation
- Functions : Expressing certainty and uncertainty
- Writing : Writing an informal e-mail

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

above (prep)	فوق / أعلى
ambition (n)	طُموح
ambitious (adj)	طَموح
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدٍّ / يتحدى
challenger (n)	متحدى
common (adj)	شائع / معروف
conquer (v) (ed)	يقهر / يغزو
deep (adj)	عميق
depth (n)	عمق
lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة
mountaineer (n)	متسلق الجبال
mountaineering (n)	تسلق الجبال
professional (adj) (n)	محترف
slightly (adv)	بدرجة طفيفة / قليلًا
summit (n)	قمة
toddler (n)	طفل يبدأ المشى

Vocabulary On Listening

climber (n)	متسلق
definitely (adv)	قطعًا / بالتأكيد
event (n)	حدث مهم
mountain (n)	جبل
natural (adj)	طبيعى
nature (n)	الطبيعة
news (n)	أخبار
ocean (n)	محيط
quiz (n)	لغز / امتحان قصير
reach (v) (ed)	يصل إلى
root (n)	جذر / أصل
sea level (n)	مستوى سطح البحر
special (adj)	خاص
sporting (adj)	رياضى
subject (n)	موضوع
trench (n)	خندق

Vocabulary On Reading

amazing (adj)	مدهش / مذهل
amazed (adj)	مندهش
amazement (n)	ذهول / دهشة
express (v) (ed)	يعبر عن
flag (n)	عَلَم
goal (n)	هدف
hobby (n)	هواية
oxygen (n)	أكسجين

pay (v) (paid) (n)	يدفع/ أجر	reason (n)	سبب
real (adj)	حقيقى	statement (n)	جملة
reality (n)	حقيقة/ واقع	understand (v)/understood	يفهم

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

absolutely (adv)	بالتأكيد	look like (v) (d)	يشبه
average (adj)	متوسط	missing (adj)	مفقود
balloon (n)	منطاد	motivate (v) (d)	يحفز
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/ يسبب	motivation (n)	حافز/ دافع
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	national pride (n)	فخر قومى
diver (n)	غواص	nervous (adj)	متوتر
diving (n)	غوص/ غطس	order (n)	ترتيب
effort (n)	مجهود	position (n)	موقع/ مكانة
enormous (adj)	ضخم	room (n)	مكان/ فراغ
equipment (n)	معدات	safe (adj)	آمن
explorer (n)	مستكشف	side (n)	جانب
expression (n)	تعبير	skill (n)	مهارة
fiction (n)	خيال	snow (n)	جليد
flight (n)	رحلة جوية/ طيران	take off (v)	تقلع
height (n)	ارتفاع	unexpectedly (adv)	من غير المتوقع
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/ يحث	wind (n)	رياح
inspiration (n)	الهام/ حافز		

Focus on Vocabulary

above	فوق	describes something that is over the top of something
ambition	طُموح	a strong desire to achieve something
challenge	تحدٍّ	something that needs a lot of skill and motivation to achieve
conquer	يقهر / يتغلب على	climb a mountain successfully
deep	عميق	describes something that goes a long way down from the surface
lifelong	مدى الحياة	describes something that exists throughout someone's life
mountaineer	متسلق الجبال	someone who climbs mountains
professional	محترف	describes a job in which you receive money for doing something that many people do as a hobby
slightly	قليلًا	describes something that is done to a small degree
toddler	طفل يبدأ المشى	a very young child who is learning to walk
summit	قمة	the top of a mountain

Expressions & Idioms

above sea level	فوق مستوى البحر	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
do quiz	يحل لغز / امتحان	no room for mistakes	لا مجال للخطأ
get control	يمتلك السيطرة	raise money	يدبر / يوفر المال
go diving	يمارس الغطس	reach their goal	يصلون لهدفهم
lose their lives	يفقدون حياتهم	take lives	تسبب الوفاة

Phrases & Prepositions

blow towards	يدفع فى اتجاه	opinion about	رأى عن
covered with	مغطى بـ	tell about	يخبر عن
learn about	يتعلم/ يعرف عن	nervous of	متوتر بخصوص

Special Idioms

Idiom	Meaning	Example
a close call	موقف سيئ كان وشيك الحدوث	It was a close call for our team when the other team almost scored.
in a tight corner	فى موقف صعب	He found himself in a tight corner after losing his job.
made my day	أسعدنى	The experience on the Red Sea really made my day.
out of the blue	فجأة و بدون توقع	The earthquake happened out of the blue causing great damage.
to keep your head/cool	تحافظ على هدوئك	You should always keep your head in difficult situations.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
ambition	طموح	aspiration	indifference	لا مبالاة
challenge	يتحدى	defy	assist	يساعد
common	شائع	familiar	rare	نادر
conquer	يقهر	beat	give in	يستسلم
lifelong	مدى الحياة	constant	temporary	مؤقت
professional	محترف	experienced	unskilled	غير ماهر

slightly	قليلًا	fairly	greatly	بشكل كبير	
amazing	مدهش	fascinating	ordinary	عادى	
express	يعبر عن	declare	conceal	يخفى	
missing	مفقود	lost	present	حاضر	
safe	أمن	secure	unprotected/ unsafe	غير محمى	

Notes on Vocabulary

room **a room**

room مكان/ فراغ (لا تجمع ولا يسبقها أداة نكرة)

- There is no room for you to sit beside me on that sofa.

a room غرفة/ حجرة (تجمع و يسبقها أداة نكرة)

- I asked the receptionist to book me a room for two nights.

summit **top**

summit قمة جبل/ مؤتمر (اجتماع) قمة

- Omar Samra is the first Egyptian to reach the summit of Everest.
- They held a summit to discuss the Palestinian issue.

top قمة الشيء (بشكل عام)

- We could see mountain tops in the distance.
- These shoes are top quality so they are very expensive.

position **location**

position

١- مكان/ موضع
٢- مكانة
٣- موضع (فى لعبة)

- Our hotel was in a central position near the city centre.
- We look forward to improving the position of women in society.
- Goalkeeper was my position in my local football team.

location موقع

- The map shows the precise location of the crash.

(be) the first / the last / the only .... + to + مصدر

- Neil Armstrong was the first one to land on the moon.
- Ahmed was the last one to enter the class.

raise **rise**

raise - raised - raised — يربى / يجمع / يرفع / يزيد (يليه مفعول)
- A number of children raised their hands.
- They had raised their prices to unreasonable levels.
- We need your help to raise money for urgent medical research.

rise - rose - risen — يرتفع / تشرق / يزداد / يستيقظ / يقف / ينهض (لا يليها مفعول)
- Prices rise sharply every year and the government should do something.
- As the sun rose in the sky, the temperature climbed.
- He rose up and went to the window.

arrive **reach**

arrive — يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول إلا بعد in-at)
- When does the Paris plane arrive?
- We arrived in Cairo late at night.
- The passengers arrived at the airport just before the plane takes off.

reach — ١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر)
٢- يصل إلى شيء معنوى
- We reached Cairo late at night.
- Ministers must reach a decision before next month.

lose **miss**

lose — يفقد / يخسر
- I lost my handbag at the airport because it was overcrowded.
- Our team lost the final match of the championship last year.

miss — يفتقد / يفوته شيء
- I really missed my family when I was abroad last month.
- I missed the train because I got up very late.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Adel took the books off the table to make .... for the television.
a) room b) a room c) the room d) rooms

2 He was standing at the .... of the stairs.
a) summit b) lid c) top d) level

3 I want to start my own business if I can .... much money.
a) rise b) arise c) arouse d) raise

4 They finally .... the coast after five weeks sailing.
a) arrived b) reached c) got d) went

5 Marco Polo was the first European explorer .... China.
a) visit b) visits c) to visit d) visited

6 I didn't know you played hockey - what .... do you play?
a) position b) location c) post d) pose

7 World leaders will meet next week for an economic ....
a) interview b) top c) summit d) press

8 At least 600 staff will .... their jobs if the factory closes.
a) miss b) gain c) increase d) lose

Listening Text

Voice 1: Part one

Leila : Hi, Abeer. Would you like to do this magazine quiz[1] with me?

Abeer : Yes. What's the subject?

Leila : It's called "The highest, the deepest and the oldest." It's about the natural world.

Abeer : Interesting! Let's start.

Leila : OK. First question: Where is the deepest part of all the oceans?

Abeer : Hmm – that's difficult. Do you know?



(1) لغز / امتحان قصير

Leila : I think that it's in the Pacific Ocean, but I'm not sure.
Abeer : Does it tell you the answers?
Leila : No, you have to phone a special number to hear the answers.
Abeer : Next question?
Leila : This has three parts. First, which is the highest mountain in the world? I think Mount Everest or Mount Kilimanjaro.
Abeer : Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro!
Leila : I agree. Part two: How far above sea level[2] is it?
Abeer : About nine thousand metres maybe?
Leila : Hmm – Mount Everest's not as high as that. It's about seven and a half thousand. OK, third part: Who was the first Egyptian to reach the summit[3] of this mountain in 2007?
Abeer : I know that! If the mountain is Mount Everest, it was definitely Omar Samra.
Leila : Yes, it was amazing[4]. We read all the news stories about him in history.
Abeer : Yes, for me his climb was the most important sporting event of 2007.

(2) فوق مستوى البحر
(3) قمة
(4) مذهل / مدهش
(5) عميق
(6) متسلق



Leila : OK. Next question. Where is the oldest tree in the world and how old is it?
Abeer : I think it's about five hundred years old, but I'm not sure where it is. Do you know?
Leila : It's older than that – I think it's about two thousand years old. I have an idea that it's in Canada.
Abeer : Let's phone up for the answers.
Leila : OK.

Voice 1: Part two



Voice 2 :
This is Quiz line. Here are the answers to "The highest, deepest and oldest" quiz.
Question one: Challenger Deep is the deepest part of the oceans – it's part of the Mariana Trench in the Pacific. It is over eleven kilometres deep[5].
Question two, part one: Mount Everest is the world's highest mountain. Part two: Mount Everest is eight thousand, eight hundred and fifty metres above sea level. And part three: the Egyptian climber[6] who reached the summit of Everest in 2007 was Omar Samra. And finally, the oldest tree in the world is nearly ten thousand years old. It's in Sweden.

Reading Text

Why do they do it?



A question which people often ask mountaineers[1] is "Why do you climb mountains?" The most common answer is "Because they are there." But this does not tell us the real reasons why people choose this exciting but dangerous hobby.

Professional[2] mountaineers climb for money, but for many others, climbing a great mountain is a lifelong[3] ambition[4]. For example, Omar Samra, the Egyptian who reached the summit of Mount Everest in 2007, says that he had wanted to climb mountains since he was a toddler[5]. He even had photos of Mount Everest on his bedroom walls. But Omar does not just climb for himself. He always takes an Egyptian flag with him and leaves it on the mountains.

Some mountaineers say that their hobby is no different from other hobbies, but most people do not understand this because the hobby is so dangerous. Since 1922, Mount Everest has been climbed by more than 4,000 people, but more than 200 of these climbers lost their lives. So perhaps we should ask a slightly[6] different question: "Why do people climb dangerous mountains?" Many mountaineers say the answer is easy: they think that most people want to conquer[7] something during their life. A dangerous mountain is a challenge[8]; when someone has climbed it, they have reached their goal and they feel fantastic.

The Italian climber Reinhold Messner was the first mountaineer in the world to climb the 14 mountains which are over 8000 metres high. What is even more amazing is that he was the first man to reach the summit of Mount Everest without the use of oxygen bottles!

(1) متسلقو الجبال
(2) محترف
(3) مدى الحياة
(4) طموح
(5) طفل يحبو
(6) قليلًا
(7) يقهر
(8) تحدٍّ

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 Who was the first Egyptian to reach the summit of this mountain in 2007?

- The first mountaineer in the world to climb the 14 mountains which are over 8000 metres high.
- He was the first man to reach the summit of Everest without the use of oxygen cylinders!

– نستخدم to + inf. بعد first/second, etc. وأيضًا بعد صفات التفضيل.

– بعد without يأتي الفعل به ing أو the use هنا اسم بمعنى استخدام.

2 But this does not tell us the real reasons why people choose this exciting but dangerous hobby.

- But Omar does not now just climb for himself.

– لاحظ استخدام (But) في أول الجملتين كبادئة لجملة مرتبطة بالجملة قبلها، أما استخدام (but) في الجملة الأولى فاستخدمت كحرف جر و ليس كأداة ربط.

3 Some mountaineers say that their hobby is no different from other hobbies, ...

– تستخدم (no) هنا للتعبير عن النفي مع عدم وجود (not) وقد تستخدم بدلًا من (any).

- There was no hospital in the town.

4 He had wanted to climb mountains since he was a toddler.

– تستخدم to + inf. بعد want واستخدمت since هنا مع الماضي التام لأن الكلام غير مرتبط بالحاضر.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... education should be our vision for the coming years.
a) Lifeless b) Long live c) Lifelong d) Long life

2 Our office is .... a department store which is always busy.
a) at b) on c) below d) above

3 The swimming pool has a .... end and a shallow end for kids.
a) deep b) high c) long d) wide

4 Lionel Messi is a/an .... player. He has fantastic skills.
a) amaze b) amazed c) amazing d) amazement

5 The .... of that mountain is always covered with snow.
a) summit b) bottom c) height d) weight

6 A child who has just learnt to walk is called a/an ....
a) giant b) toddler c) dwarf d) spirit

7 Omar Samara usually works with a group of Arab .... on high mountains.
a) swimmers b) divers c) drivers d) mountaineers

8 A .... is something difficult or new that needs effort or skill.
a) challenge b) change c) sweat d) check

9 Before you can climb mountains, you have to .... your fear.
a) win b) invade c) gain d) conquer

10 The worker was .... late, so his boss didn't punish him.
a) slightly b) extremely c) terribly d) very

11 My friend's grandfather .... his life in a sailing accident.
a) donated b) missed c) lost d) saved

12 These two sisters have a lot of .... features. They are like twins.
a) common b) different c) same d) alike

13 A .... is the part of a plant or tree that grows under the ground and gets water from the soil.
a) leaf b) branch c) root d) bottom

14 My cousin's .... to become a famous writer is about to be achieved. He has published his first book.
a) despair b) career c) conspiracy d) ambition

15 .... basketball players in America can earn huge sums of money.
a) Amateur b) Professional c) Old d) Patient

16 Factories and building companies must provide safety ...., and make sure it is used.
a) weapons b) software c) rules d) equipment

17 Omar Samra was the first Egyptian .... the summit of Everest in 2007.
a) reach b) to reach c) reached d) reaching

18 The World Cup is one of the major sporting .... in the world.
a) incidents b) accidents c) events d) ceremonies

19 It took more than three days to .... the top of the mountain.
a) reach b) arrive c) get d) walk

20 The children waved .... as the President's car drove by.
a) strings b) ropes c) flags d) poles

21 She felt great .... when her name was announced for the prize.
a) pride b) proud c) proudly d) prude

22 Their problems started when their father .... died.
a) unexpectedly b) doubtfully c) unintentionally d) happily

23 There's a wonderful view of all the city from the .... of the Cairo Tower.
a) back b) summit c) bottom d) top

24 Some teachers let their students .... a quiz before starting the lesson.
a) make b) do c) play d) run

25 When we were in Sharm El-Sheikh, we .... diving every day.
a) became b) climbed c) rose d) went

26 There is no .... for mistakes in the work of the surgeon.
a) room b) a room c) the room d) rooms

27 A/ An .... is someone who travels through an unknown area to find out about it.
a) explorer b) inventor c) discoverer d) commuter

28 I was very nervous .... flying. I often travelled by ship.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

29 Poets are .... by the past experiences they got through.
a) imported b) exported c) inspired d) fired

30 When I hear bad news, I try hard to .... my cool.
a) keep b) stay c) remain d) still

31 We faced dangers. We were safe in the end but it was a .... call.
a) remote b) tight c) near d) close

32 I always .... my thanks to my parents for their efforts.
a) express b) impress c) depress d) press

33 The police are asking for a recent photo of the .... boy.
a) missed b) missing c) losing d) apparent

34 The .... of our research this month today will be the new space stations.
a) object b) reason c) subject d) cause

35 The Underground is one of the most .... engineering projects of modern times in Egypt.
a) ambiguous b) ambitious c) mysterious d) vicious

36 I'm not sure what I'd do if I were in your ....
a) disposition b) location c) exposition d) position

37 We live on a hill which is more than 400 metres above sea ....
a) standard b) level c) bottom d) top

38 By midday, the sun had .... high in the sky and it was very hot.
a) risen b) raised c) arisen d) aroused

39 Stamp collecting has been a .... of mine since I was a child.
a) lobby b) challenge c) hobby d) game

40 Everest is amazing, but it's a .... mountain.
a) frightened b) frighten c) fright d) frightening

41 What was your .... for becoming a good teacher?
a) innovation b) motivation c) reclamation d) ambition

42 We couldn't see the beach because of the .... of the wall around our house.
a) weight b) width c) height d) length

43 Hot air .... are still used for some tourist rides in some cities such as Luxor.
a) gliders b) planes c) balloons d) eagles

44 He was in a tight corner, this means he had a ....
a) prize b) charity c) problem d) surprise

45 The workers dug a .... for gas lines of the new city.
a) trench b) wall c) monument d) road

46 She looked at him with a surprised .... on her face.
a) position b) expression c) writing d) exposition

47 The nurse must use her communication .... to help the patient feel comfortable.
a) skulls b) skins c) skips d) skills

48 Mona read the whole research and .... notes of the main points.
a) did b) made c) performed d) acted

49 The names of the students are arranged in alphabetical ....
a) location b) way c) menu d) order

50 He learned .... the doctor's appointment by telephone yesterday.
a) about b) at c) with d) on

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The verb "beat" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
a) challenge b) reach c) conquer d) common

2 Ever since he was promoted as a head engineer, he has been getting .... himself.
a) above b) below c) under d) off

3 The bank guards were ordered to .... anyone entering the building for extra security measures.
a) meet b) refuse c) challenge d) agree

4 The opposite of the word "slightly" is ....
a) fairly b) often c) intentionally d) greatly

5 Working for Microsoft Corporation was the .... of my life's experience.
a) summit b) top c) reason d) goal

6 There is a great deal of .... ground between the main political parties on this issue.
a) familiar b) common c) rare d) flat

7 The letters she sent her parents show her .... affection for them.
a) shallow b) intensive c) deep d) power

8 I might see you tomorrow, but I'll phone in any ....
a) accident b) event c) incident d) happening

9 He is not to leave without the teacher's .... permission.
a) fast b) slow c) vague d) express

10 5,000 new flats are to be built, but this is just a drop in the .... for such a vast country.
a) ocean b) lake c) sea d) rain

Grammar

Adjectives الصفات

الصفة : هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الذى بعدها جمعًا.

e.g. - He is a tall boy. The boy is tall.

e.g. - They are clever students.

الصفة تأتى قبل الاسم، وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be

تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية:

be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.

- She is beautiful.
- The food tastes good.

الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

- afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, ill, pleased, etc.
- They are still alive.
- I didn't go to school as I was ill.

الصفات الآتية يأتى بعدها اسم:

chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.

Degrees of Adjectives
درجات الصفات

- **Positive** الصفة
- **Comparative** المقارنة بين شيئين
- **Superlative** التفضيل

One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد

Positive		Comparative		Superlative		
tall	طويل	taller	than	the	tallest	في المقارنة نضع adj.+ er + than في التفضيل نضع The + adj. + est
young	صغير السن	younger	than	the	youngest	
soft	ناعم	softer	than	the	softest	
short	قصير	shorter	than	the	shortest	
cheap	رخيص	cheaper	than	the	cheapest	
large	واسع	larger	than	the	largest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف e نضع r/st
wide	عريض	wider	than	the	widest	
big	كبير الحجم	bigger	than	the	biggest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضعف الساكن
hot	ساخن	hotter	than	the	hottest	
low	منخفض	lower	than	the	lowest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف w قبله o أو e نضع er/est دون تضعيف
few	قليل	fewer	than	the	fewest	
Two or more-syllable adjectives ending in y						
ugly	قبيح	uglier	than	the	ugliest	إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهي بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest
easy	سهل	easier	than	the	easiest	
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the	heaviest	
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the	happiest	
lucky	محظوظ	luckier	than	the	luckiest	
healthy	صحي	healthier	than	the	healthiest	

Examples:

- Shady is a young boy.	Positive
- Shady is younger than Ehab.	Comparative
- Shady is the youngest boy in class/of all students.	Superlative

More than Two-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطعين

Positive		Comparative more + الصفة + than		Superlative the most + الصفة
modern	عصرى	more modern	than	the most modern
careful	حريص	more careful	than	the most careful
expensive	غالٍ	more expensive	than	the most expensive
wonderful	رائع	more wonderful	than	the most wonderful
exciting	مثير	more exciting	than	the most exciting
difficult	صعب	more difficult	than	the most difficult
interesting	شيق	more interesting	than	the most interesting
beautiful	جميل	more beautiful	than	the most beautiful

Examples:

- English is an interesting subject. — Positive
- English is more interesting than Spanish. — Comparative
- English is the most interesting subject of all languages. — Superlative

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد/ حسن	better than	the best
bad	سيئ/ ردىء	worse than	the worst
little	قليل	less than	the least
much/many	كثير	more than	the most
far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest

Examples:

- Addiction is a bad habit. — Positive
- Addiction is worse than smoking. — Comparative
- Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life. — Superlative

(not) as .... as تساوى وعدم تساوى الصفات

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj. + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.

ملاحظات

١ – نستخدم no/never دائمًا فى صيغة المقارنة.

- No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
- I've never driven a faster car than Mercedes.

٢ – نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل.

- Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever bought.

٣ – يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/even لتبين مقدار المقارنة قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er .... أو more

- Gold is much/a lot more expensive than silver.
- Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

٤ – نستخدم less + adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع أى صفة.

- Silver is less expensive than gold. This book is less interesting than that one.
- Fiat is less cheap than Toyota.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The blue whale makes a .... sound than the polar bear.
a) loud b) loudest c) louder d) more loud

2 Jupiter is .... planet in the solar system.
a) the most big b) the bigger c) the biggest d) the big

3 Many people prefer Spain for their holidays as it is .... than England.
a) warm b) warmer c) the warmest d) more warm

4 In my opinion, the tiger is .... animal of all.
a) danger b) more dangerous c) a dangerous d) the most dangerous

5 I think physics is .... than chemistry this year.
a) more difficult b) most difficult c) difficult d) the most difficult

6 Ahmed is as .... as Ashraf.
a) oldest b) older c) age d) old

7 Marwa is younger .... Nahid.
a) of b) than c) as d) like

8 January is the .... month of the year.
a) coldest b) colder c) cold d) most cold

9 I've .... seen a taller person than Amr in the basketball team.
a) yet b) ever c) never d) now

10 Travelling by plane is .... expensive than travelling by train.
a) many b) most c) much d) more

Extra Points

١ نستخدم هذه الصيغة مع صفات المقارنة وهى بمعنى (كلما .... كلما ....)

The + صفة مقارنة + اسم/ ضمير ...., the + صفة مقارنة + اسم/ ضمير ....

- The more books you read, the more information you get.
- The quicker you run, the earlier you arrive.

٢ هناك صفات مشتركة فى النوعين فتأخذ er/est or more/the most وهى:

- clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc. simple - simpler - simplest (more simple - the most simple)

٣ هناك مقارنة نستخدم فيها the بين شيئين من نوع واحد:

- Of the two cars this is the faster.
- Noha is the younger of two girls.

٤ نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال.

- We attended a most interesting lecture.
- The question that is asked most often.

٥ لاحظ استخدام هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative

- Cars are getting faster and faster.
- Computers are getting cheaper and cheaper.

٦ نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the cleverest of his friends in electronics.

٧ نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان.

- Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt.

٨ لاحظ استخدام (from) مع (farthest) واستخدام (nearest) مع (to)

- Luxor is the farthest city from Cairo.
- Banha is the nearest city to Cairo.

٩ لاحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية the same + noun + as

- Adel is the same age as Sameer.

لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Although we aren't rich, my children go to .... schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better

2 "*Gulliver's Travels*" is .... novel I've ever read.
a) exciting b) more exciting c) as exciting as d) the most exciting

3 Is the Gobi Desert .... the Sahara desert?
a) large b) larger than c) more larger d) the largest

4 The blue whale is .... animal in the world.
a) the heaviest b) heavy c) heavier d) more heavy

5 A falcon has got a .... eyesight than a human.
a) good b) best c) better d) bad

6 Vegetables are .... than meat.
a) healthy b) more healthier c) healthier d) more healthy

7 This dress is .... of all you've tried on yet.
a) nicer b) nice c) the nicest d) as nice

8 It is .... more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
a) very b) far c) little d) few

9 The film we saw last night was .... interesting of all I have seen this month.
a) more b) the least c) less d) the little

10 Maher isn't .... friendly as Hussein.
a) than b) so c) far d) much

11 I missed my bus because I got up .... usual.
a) late b) the latest c) later than d) more late

12 Unfortunately, her illness was .... we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious
c) more serious than d) the most serious

13 Health and happiness are .... than money.
a) important b) more important
c) the least important d) as important

14 The older we grow, ... we become.
a) the wise b) the wiser c) the wisely d) wisely

15 English is .... to study than Chinese.
a) easy b) more easier c) much easier d) less easier

16 The children next door are .... than ours.
a) more noisy b) the nosiest c) noisy d) nosier

17 Lamiaa is the .... of the two sisters.
a) young b) younger c) youngest d) as young as

18 Big cars that use a lot of petrol are .... popular now than twenty years ago.
a) less b) much c) least d) little

19 I think air pollution is .... more dangerous than sound pollution.
a) so b) a lot c) many d) a lot of

20 I regret selling my car. It was .... decision I've ever made.
a) a bad b) worse c) as bad d) the worst

21 As I ran, my leg got .... tired.
a) less b) most c) more and more d) many

22 I've never bought a .... expensive car than this one.
a) much b) more c) most d) least

23 The .... I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.
a) long b) longer c) longest d) most long

24 Riding a horse is not .... riding a bike.
a) easier b) as easy as c) the easiest d) so easy

25 For me, Omar Samra's climb was the .... event of 2007.
a) most important b) more important c) important d) importance

26 The maths test was .... difficult test that I have ever taken.
a) the least b) less c) little d) the less

27 The Amazon isn't .... the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
a) longer b) long c) as long as d) so long

28 That's the least interesting book I've .... read.
a) ever b) never c) yet d) hardly

29 Mona is .... fatter than her sister.
a) much b) most c) more d) less

30 Your younger brother is .... you now.
a) taller b) tallest c) as tall as d) very tall

31 I will buy a motorbike. A motorbike .... expensive as a car.
a) is b) isn't so c) is more d) is less

32 The .... you study, the higher marks you get.
a) hard b) harder c) hardest d) heard

33 The .... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
a) less b) least c) most d) must

34 Who is .... beautiful; Hend or Sally?
a) as b) more c) the most d) most

35 Ahmed and Sara are the same age. She is .... him.
a) older than b) so old as c) as old as d) younger

36 Where can I find the .... brand of tea here?
a) cheapest b) cheaper c) most cheap d) cheap

37 I've .... read a more frightening story than "*The Monster*".
a) yet b) ever c) never d) since

38 No other river in the world is .... the Nile.
a) more longer than b) the longest
c) longest than d) longer than

39 Of the two girls, Nada is the ....
a) oldest b) older c) old d) much older

40 Your bag is the same .... as mine.
a) weight b) heavy c) heavier d) heaviest

41 I can't hear you. Could you speak a little ...., please?
a) loudly b) loudest c) loud d) louder

42 We aren't the same height. You're .... than me.
a) taller b) higher c) longer d) bigger

43 I know that my handwriting is bad, but Osama's is ....
a) badly b) the worst c) bad d) worse

44 The more you concentrate, the .... you will be.
a) clever b) cleverer c) most clever d) cleverest

45 Tennis is a .... harder game than football.
a) more b) far c) most d) fewer

46 It's .... and more difficult to find a quiet beach.
a) the most b) most c) more d) much

47 The .... the joke, the louder the laugh.
a) worst b) best c) good d) better

48 .... tourists are visiting the museum than yesterday.
a) Fewer b) Few c) Fewest d) The fewer

49 I need a .... computer than this one.
a) moderner b) more modern c) modern d) most modern

50 This joke is the .... joke I've ever heard.
a) most funny b) more funny c) funniest d) funny

2 Fill in the space:

1 I wanted to buy a car last week. I went to ....(a)............. largest exhibition in my city. The cars being sold were far ....(b)............. beautiful than I expected. I saw the prettiest car I've ....(c)............. seen but it was also the ....(d)............. expensive one. So I couldn't afford ....(e)............. buy it. At last, when I was about to leave, I saw a smart one ....(f)............. I decided to own.

2 Cairo is the ....(a)............. city in Egypt. No other city is larger ....(b)............. it. Cairo's underground system provides transport for ....(c)............. than 40% of the city's work force. Cairo is as famous ....(d)............. many other cities in the world because of its monuments and places of interest. Tourists find .... (e)............. their favourite destination ....(f)............. they can enjoy the fine weather and our good nice, tasty local food.

3 My father has bought a new house lately. It's lovely. It's much ....(a)............. in size and looks ....(b)............. modern than our last one. I finally have a room that I don't have to share with my ....(c)............. brother who is still in primary school. I like the neighbours a lot ....(d)............. they are very kind. They are definitely the friendliest people I have ....(e)............. met. The shops in the new area are much larger and have a more variety of goods ....(f)............. those which were in my old place.

4 Have you ever thought of running your ....(a)......... business? Many businesspersons say ....(b)............. deciding to start their own business was the best decision they ....(c)............. made. Working ....(d)............. yourself means you are in charge of your life. Running a business certainly isn't for everyone. You need to be the type of person ....(e)............. is never afraid ....(f)............. risk.

5 It's very important to get the most out of your time when you sit down to read books. Here's how: find a quiet place to study so that you'll ....(a)............. able to concentrate, and switch ....(b)............. your mobile phone so as not to be disturbed while you are working. Many students make a 'to do' list ....(c)............. they study with the aim of reminding themselves how ....(d)............. time they should spend on each topic. Another good idea is to give ....(e)............. a reward each time you achieve a goal in order ....(f)............. stay motivated.

6 Omar, the goalkeeper, and Salah, one of the backs, ...(a)............. injured in last Saturday's match. Omar, ...(b)............. injuries were very slight, will be ....(c)............. to play in today's match, which is a good thing because the team hasn't got ....(d)............. goalkeeper. The coach ....(e)............. him much encouragement. It's the final and if they win, they will have many rewards in .... (f)............. to the cup.

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We got to the station just .... to catch the last train.
a) for time b) the time c) in time d) on time

2 They didn't manage to get to the match .... it was nearly over.
a) until b) before c) by the time d) when

3 For .... information, contact the reception desk.
a) farther b) furthest c) further d) far

4 My neighbours are away for the weekend, so that can't be .... car outside.
a) theirs b) our c) them d) their

5 They send emails to .... every week.
a) himself b) each other c) they d) itself

6 There were so .... people at the exhibition that we could hardly move.
a) many b) a lot of c) much d) lots of

7 Don't forget to phone me, ...?
a) you did b) would you c) do you d) will you

8 If you want to see the director, you'll have to .... an appointment.
a) do b) make c) face d) construct

9 Mohamed Salah was regarded .... the greatest player in Liverpool last year.
a) as b) such c) like d) so

10 It is said that .... Egyptians have the sense of humour even in hard times.
a) more b) any c) the d) no article

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Expressing Certainty and Uncertainty التعبير عن التأكد وعدم التأكد

Certainty	*Uncertainty*
1. I know that. It's definitely	1. I'm not sure.
2. I'm sure. It's	2. I don't know.
3. I have an idea.	3. I have no idea.
4. Certainly, it is about	4. Maybe.

Writing: An informal email

Write an email to a friend about something you have just done that you are proud of.

- Choose something that really happened to you, or something fictional. If it is fiction, choose something you would really like to do one day.
- Write notes in answer to these questions.
- What did you do?
- When did you do it?
- Why did you do it?
- How did it make you feel?

To : Mazin
From : Ehab
Subject : An exciting trip

Hi Mazin,

How are you? I'd like to tell you of an exciting trip I have just made. I went in a safari trip with my family last week. We started the trip with a group of tourists that were visiting Egypt and Sinai for the first time. I thought that the trip would really make my day. Our guide took us in three vehicles into the desert. Unluckily, our vehicle broke down and the guide said that he had to go with the two other ones to get help.

The guide was late and we seemed to get lost in the desert. It was nearly six p.m and sunset was near. We were in a tight corner. We thought that we would soon die in the desert at night. Suddenly, one of the tourists could start our car and said he could drive very well. But we didn't really know the way back to our hotel. I asked everyone to keep their cool. As I had studied about the stars at school, I could guide the group using our map and the location of the stars. We eventually reached the hotel and found that all police officers in the city were looking for us. I was very proud to have saved my family and the tourists with us.

I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Ehab

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. What do you think about the dangerous hobbies some people do? Write about your hobby.
2. Travelling abroad has advantages and disadvantages.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Although mountaineering is a great challenge, many people regard it as their lifelong achievement. They even consider it a usual hobby.
2. Unemployment and illiteracy are two major causes that lead to crimes and violence. That's why we all should try to fight them.
3. It is really hard to understand why some people enjoy dangerous hobbies such as parachuting and motor racing. Really they can lose their lives in them.
4. Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political and educational fields, especially in the Middle East. Thus we should try to help restore this role.
5. Companies which manufacture mountaineering equipment pay professional climbers to advertise their equipment. This will encourage people to use their equipment.
6. The government of Nepal set many regulations for climbing Everest to limit the number of its climbers and ensure their safety. This aims at saving lives.

B) Translate into English:

١- يتميز متسلقو الجبال بالمغامرة واللياقة البدنية التى يكتسبونها من هواياتهم الخطيرة.

٢- تمتلئ حياتنا اليوم بالكثير من التحديات التى تتطلب الصبر والعمل الجاد للتغلب عليها.

٣- يحتفظ عمر سمرة دائمًا بعلم مصر الذى يظهر ولاءه وحبه لبلده وفخره بها فى كل مكان.

٤- تسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى فى حل المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل.

٥- أصبح لزامًا على أفراد المجتمع تغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية لمواجهة الزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

٦- تمثل الوحدة الوطنية فى مصر عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

Enrich your Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	national	القومية
consuming	الاستهلاكية	national unity	الوحدة الوطنية
ensure	يضمن	obstacle	عقبة
illiteracy	الأمية	patience	الصبر
leading	قيادى	political	سياسى
limit	يحدد	regard	يعتبر
loyality	ولاء/ إخلاص	restore	يستعيد
manipulate	العبث	unemployment	البطالة
manufacture	يصنع		

Test 6 Based on Unit 6

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 Climbing a mountain is a real .... to me. It's terribly high.
a) challenge b) challenger c) challenges d) challenged

2 I wish I could .... my fear of dark places.
a) gain b) win c) conquer d) surrender

3 Many of the weekend's major sporting .... were cancelled due to bad weather.
a) incidents b) events c) accidents d) ceremonies

4 Omar Samra's .... ambition was to reach the summit of Everest.
a) lifeless b) alive c) long life d) lifelong

5 My father advises me to keep my .... if the test is difficult.
a) head b) cold c) coldness d) call

6 People should work hard to .... their goals in life.
a) end b) arrive c) reach d) walk

7 There is no .... to park your car here. It is crowded today.
a) room b) a room c) the room d) rooms

8 The reports about talented children provide us with .... to succeed.
a) problem b) hinder c) trouble d) motivation

9 The word 'aspiration' is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) fear b) speed c) ambition d) challenge

10 All members of society work together for the .... good.
a) formal b) common c) economic d) familiar

11 Qasr Al-Nil Bridge is not .... the 6th October Bridge.
a) so long as b) longer as c) longest as d) as long

12 You look .... than you were yesterday.
a) badly b) good c) best d) better

13 Which is ....; the train or the bus?
a) much safest b) more safer c) safer d) safe

14 What is the .... enjoyable thing about learning English?
a) much b) most c) many d) more

15 They are two sisters. Heba is the ....
a) older b) oldest c) old d) tallest

16 The more people want to do something, the .... it will become.
a) cheapest b) cheaper c) most cheapest d) cheap

17 **Fill in the space:**

Everyone knows about the problem of waste here on our planet, but did you know there is also ....(a)............ of rubbish in space? According to scientists, there may be as many as one million pieces of space rubbish floating around ....(b)............ Earth. Many of these pieces are smaller ....(c)............ a postage stamp, but some of them are ....(d)............ bigger. If we make the ....(e)............ use of rubbish, we won't suffer ....(f)............ pollution and diseases any more in the future.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A desert is a special region where only certain kinds of plants and animals can survive. All deserts have very little water. This means that only animals and plants that can do without water for long periods of time can exist in the desert. Plants in the deserts are particularly adapted to the dry and hot environment. One well-known desert plant is the cactus. Like many desert plants, this plant has very tiny leaves. As plants lose most of their water through their leaves, the small leaves of the cactus help to cut down water evaporation. There are other desert plants that do not have leaves at all. Some desert plants survive by avoiding the dry season altogether. During the dry season, this plant remains as a seed and does not emerge from the soil at all. When the rains come, this seed would grow very quickly into a plant. It would bloom rapidly and then scatter its seeds before the dry season returns.

Desert animals have also learnt to adapt well to life in this region. The camel, for example, survives well in the desert because water can be stored in its body. Other desert animals include rodents. These animals need very little water as they can get all the water they require from their food.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 The climate in the desert is ....
a) mild and windy
b) hot and dry
c) rainy and windy
d) hot and wet

19 The plants found in the desert must have ....
a) long leaves to store water in them
b) deep roots to get water easily
c) either tiny leaves or no leaves at all
d) few leaves

20 To avoid the dry season, some plants ....
a) remains as a seed and does not emerge from the soil
c) drink much water throughout the year
b) hide under other plants to get protection
d) remain in far and wet regions under the sand

21 The antonym of the word "include" is ....
a) enclose
b) consist
c) contain
d) exclude

B) Answer the following questions:

22 What kind of animals and plants that can exist in the desert?

23 How is having tiny leaves helpful to the plant living in the desert?

24 **Get words from the passage that mean:**

1) appear. 2) small animals that have long sharp front teeth.

25 **Translate into English:**

- أن تكون غير أنانيٍّ ومتواضعًا وذكيًا وصبورًا فى ساعة المعاناة وقويًا فى وقت المشاكل وشخصًا مخلصًا ومحبًا فأنت إذًا إنسان ناجح حقًّا.

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Fortunate people are those who can balance between their work requirements and having time to read and enjoy their leisure.

27 **Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:**

1. "How to protect your environment and make it more beautiful."
2. "No gain without pain."

Unit 7



Cooperation and Tolerance

Objectives

- Listening : Listening for gist and detailed information
- Grammar : Extreme adjectives and adverbs of degree
- Reading : Reading for gist and specific information
- Critical thinking : Discussing the benefits of cooperation and tolerance
- Functions : Asking for and giving advice
- Writing : Writing an advertisement for a magazine

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

combination (n)	مجموعة
combine (v) (d)	يجمع / يضم
cooperate (v) (d)	يتعاون
cooperation (n)	التعاون
cooperative (adj)	متعاون / تعاونى
decision (n)	قرار
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
distract (v) (ed)	يشوش الذهن / يُلهى
effective (adj)	مؤثر / فعّال
goal (n)	هدف
individual (n) (adj)	فرد / فردى
prove (v) (d)	يثبت
proof (n)	إثبات / دليل
rely on (v) (y ied)	يعتمد على
succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
successful (adj)	ناجح
teen/teenager (n)	مراهق
teenage (adj)	فى مرحلة المراهقة

Vocabulary On Listening

alone (adj)	بمفرده
beat (v) beat - beaten	يهزم / يفوز على
brilliant (adj)	لامع / متميز
captain (n)	قائد فريق
castle (n)	قلعة
choice (n)	اختيار
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد
depend (v) (ed)	يعتمد
exhausted (adj)	مُرهَق
hockey (n)	لعبة الهوكى
lamb (n)	خروف صغير / لحم الضأن
mean (v) meant - meant	يعنى / يقصد
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى
squash (n)	لعبة الإسكواش
team (n)	فريق / جماعى
team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية

Vocabulary On Reading

advice (n)	نصيحة
advise (v) (d)	ينصح
article (n)	مقال
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل
communication (n)	اتصال / تواصل
essential (adj)	ضرورى

get into (v) got into	يتخذ/ يكتسب (عادة)	responsible (adj)	مسئول
habit (n)	عادة	situation (n)	موقف
improve (v) (d)	يحسن/ يتحسن	together (adv)	معًا
independently (adv)	باستقلال	tolerance (n)	تسامح
independent (adj)	مستقل	tolerant (adj)	متسامح
independence (n)	استقلال	train (v) (ed)	يدرب/ يتدرب
patient (n)	مريض	training (n)	تدريب
responsibility (n)	مسئولية		

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ ينجز	look after (v) (ed)	يعتنى بـ
advertisement (n)	إعلان	magazine (n)	مجلة
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/ يستفيد	member (n)	فرد/ عضو
business manager (n)	مدير أعمال	mix (v) (ed)	يخلط/ يختلط
cartoon (n)	رسوم كارتونية	neighbour (n)	جار
club (n)	نادٍ	personal (adj)	شخصى
designer (n)	مصمم	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
editor (n)	محرر	publish (v) (ed)	ينشر
excellent (adj)	ممتاز	quality (n)	نوعية/ جودة
experience (n)	خبرة/ تجربة	radio (n)	إذاعة
extra (adj)	إضافى	reason (n)	سبب
facts (n)	حقائق	refuse (v) (d)	يرفض
illustrator (n)	رسام	result (n)	نتيجة
job title (n)	مسمى وظيفى	revise (v) (d)	يراجع
joke (n)	مزحة/ نكتة	tired (adj)	متعَب
local (adj) (n)	محلى	web page (n)	صفحة إنترنت

Focus on Vocabulary

combination	مجموعة	a mixture of things that are put together
cooperate	يتعاون	to work with other people to achieve the same thing
decision	قرار	a choice that you make after thinking about different possibilities
distract	يشوش الذهن / يشتت	to stop someone giving their full attention to something
effective	مؤثر / فعّال	describes something that works well and has a significant result
goal	هدف	an aim or ambition
habit	عادة	something that you do regularly, usually without thinking
independently	باستقلال	not needing to ask people for something
individual	فردى	describes something that is intended for one person
prove	يثبت	to show or demonstrate that something is true
rely on	يعتمد على	to trust someone or something to do something
responsibility	مسئولية	a duty to check that something is done or looked after
teen/teenager	مراهق	someone between the ages of thirteen and nineteen
tolerant	متسامح	allowing other people to do or say what they want, even though you may not approve of what they are doing

Expressions & Idioms

do running	يمارس الجرى
do sport	يمارس رياضة
eleven-a-side football	كرة القدم العادية (١١ لاعبًا)
five-a-side football	كرة القدم الخماسية
go wrong	يسوء / يتعطل
have different opinions	لديه آراء مختلفة
keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته
make/take decisions	يتخذ قرارات
make sure	يتأكد
on your own	بمفردك
people of my own age	ناس فى مثل سنى
part of a team	جزء من الفريق
people of different ages	ناس من أعمار مختلفة
show tolerance towards	يظهر التسامح (القبول) تجاه
take responsibility for	يتحمل مسئولية
people of different ages	ناس من أعمار مختلفة

Phrases & Prepositions

afraid of	خائف من
change into/to	يتغير / يغير إلى
cooperate with	يتعاون مع
depend on	يعتمد على
different from	مختلف عن
important for	هام لـ
mix with	يختلط بـ
think of/about	يفكر فى

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
combination	مجموعة / تجميع	mixture	division/separation	انفصال / تقسيم
cooperate	يتعاون	collaborate	obstruct	يعرقل / يعيق
distract	يشتت	confuse/disturb	clarify/calm	يوضح / يهدئ
effective	مؤثر / فعَّال	efficient	ineffective	غير مؤثر

prove	يثبت	confirm		disprove	يدحض
rely on	يعتمد على	count on		disregard	يتجاهل
succeed	ينجح	accomplish		fail	يفشل
habit	عادة	routine		disinclination	ابتعاد
independently	باستقلال	freely		dependently	باتكالية
responsibility	مسئولية	duty		irresponsibility	عدم مسئولية
tolerance	تسامح	endurance		intolerance	عدم التسامح
extra	إضافى	additional		main	أساسى

Notes on Vocabulary

effective — impressive — affecting

effective مؤثر / فعّال (له تأثير)
- The new vaccine is highly effective against the disease.

impressive مؤثر (يترك / ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)
- The visit to Saint Catherine in Sinai was very impressive. I enjoyed it a lot.

affecting مؤثر(يوحى بالشجن)
- The film about the poor girl was so affecting that it made my mother cry.

local — national — international

local
١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/ قرية/ مدينة)
٢- أحد السكان المحليين
- Alaa worked in the local newspaper before he travelled to the city.
- We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.

national قومى (خاص ببلد)
- Tourism helps to increase the national income of many countries.

international دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)
- The United Nations is the most important international organisation.

habit **custom**

habit عادة شخصية
- Smoking is a very bad habit that we all must fight.

custom عادة (شعبية)/ عُرْف
- It is the custom for the bride to be dressed in white in most countries.

team **group** **pack**

team فريق (الناس الذين يلعبون رياضة أو يعملون معًا لإنجاز عمل معين).
- The coins were discovered by a team of archaeologists.

group جماعة (بعض الناس أو الأشياء الذين يكونون معًا فى مكان ما).
- Outside the school, little groups of friends were talking to each other.

pack سرب/ قطيع من الحيوانات من نفس النوع وخاصة المفترسة.
- As cooperative animals, lions always hunt their prey in packs.

on your own **of your own**

on your own = alone بمفردك
- You can't play team games on your own.

of your own ملكك (بنفس معنى صفة الملكية your) ويسبقها المملوك
- I met a friend of your own in the club.

combination **mixture**

combination مجموعة من أشياء تقوم بأداء (مع احتفاظ كل بخصائصه)
- The team's main problems were a result of combination of bad planning and lack of finance.
- The band's music is an odd combination of jazz and opera.

mixture
١- مزيج (من مشاعر) تعطى إيحاء محددًا
٢- مزيج من أشياء مختلفة (تمزج لتكوين شىء واحد).
- She felt a strange mixture of excitement and fear.
- The chef marinated the chicken in a mixture of olive oil, lemon juice and spices.

communicate **contact**

communicate يتواصل أو يتفاهم
- Deaf people can communicate in sign language.

contact يتصل (باستخدام أحد وسائل الاتصال).
- I contact with my colleagues at work by email.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The most .... solution to traffic jam is to build more roads.
a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant

2 Strangers should respect the .... of the country they are in.
a) habits b) assignments c) customs d) compounds

3 I've been living .... my own for four years now. I feel so lonely.
a) of b) in c) at d) on

4 The cup was presented to the .... captain after winning the final.
a) group b) team c) pack d) flock

5 A simple .... of glucose and water can save lives in many parts of the world.
a) blend b) combination c) mixer d) mixture

6 For more information about the job, please .... the secretary by phone or email.
a) link b) communicate c) contact d) connect

7 The news report about the accident victims was very ....
a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant

8 The .... anthems of the teams are played at the beginning of a big football match.
a) national b) local c) global d) international

Listening Text

Ali : They're starting lots of sports at our sports centre[1] soon. I can't decide what to try. Which sport do you think I should choose?

Omar : They're all really exciting sports, but it depends on why you want to do sport.

Ali : What do you mean?

Omar : Well, do you want to keep fit, or to prove how good you are at something, or just to meet other people?

Ali : I don't really know – it's a combination[2] of all three, but the main reason is because I want to do something with other people of my own age.



(1) مركز رياضي
(2) مجموعة

(3) رياضات فردية
(4) رياضة جماعية
(5) مجهَد/ مرهَق
(6) لامع/ متميز
(7) بالتأكيد

Omar : OK, the answer is quite easy, isn't it?

Ali : Is it?

Omar : Yes. You see, sports like squash are individual sports[3] – you have to beat the person you are playing on your own.

Ali : Yes, I see. And basketball is a team sport[4].

Omar : That's right. You can't play it on your own – you need a team of five people, and you can't win team games without working very hard with the other people on your team. If you ask me, I think you'd enjoy a team sport like basketball more than an individual sport.



Ali : So do you think that I should choose basketball?

Omar : No, I don't – you need to be extremely tall to be a good basketball player. What other team games can you do at the sports centre?



Ali : There's five-a-side football, but I already play eleven-a-side football. You need to run more in five-a-side football, so after I play it, I feel absolutely exhausted[5]. I think that you do less running in hockey.

Omar : Well, why don't you try hockey? My friend is the captain of a hockey team. He's absolutely brilliant[6] at hockey and he can teach you how to play it.

Ali : Thanks, Omar. I'm definitely[7] going to try hockey.

Omar : A good choice. I think that you'll be really good at hockey. I'm hungry. Let's have a sandwich at the café.



Ali : Good idea.

Reading Text

Teach yourself to be a better person



When you play a team sport, one of the most important things to remember is that you are part of a team. There are many situations in life when groups of people need to cooperate(1) to succeed. For example, surgeons, doctors and nurses work together to help a patient.

It isn't always easy to cooperate with other people, especially when you are a teenager(2). It is easy to get into bad habits, for example, not communicating with your parents, being late for school, not doing your homework and so on. How can you change these bad habits into good habits?

Train yourself to be tolerant. There are many situations when you need to cooperate with people who are different from you. Tolerance of other people is very important. Remember that you can learn things from many different people. Always listen to others, even if they have different opinions. Communication is extremely important.

Give yourself goals(3) in life. What do you want to do and achieve? When you decide to do something, understand why you are doing it and make sure you finish it. Do not be distracted(4) by other things which are less important. Do not stop doing something when it becomes difficult. Tell yourself that you will be successful(5) and you probably will!

(1) يتعاون
(2) مراهق
(3) أهداف
(4) مشوش
(5) ناجح
(6) يعتمد على
(7) مؤثر / فعّال
(8) مراهقون

An essential good habit is that you should take responsibility for your life. You should not always rely on(6) your parents or other people to do things. You should learn how to make important decisions and not be afraid to work or study independently to be successful.

There are lots of books which can give advice to help you to improve your habits. One of these is *Seven Habits of Highly Effective(7) Teens(8)*, by Sean Covey. This book gives many ideas about how teenagers can learn to succeed in life. If you can change your bad habits to good ones when you are a teenager, you will be able to do really amazing things.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 They're starting lots of sports at our sports centre soon.

– يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث قد تم الإعداد له فى المستقبل وفى الجملة السابقة (النادى قد جُهز لبدء ألعاب، وهذه الألعاب معروف أنها ستبدأ قريبًا).

– كلمة sports تعامل هنا على أنها صفة وليست اسمًا لأن بعدها اسم (centre).

2 Which sport do you think I should choose?

– لم نستخدم should فى شكل سؤال(قبل الفاعل) لأنها ليست بداية السؤال، وأن الفعل المساعد هو do لذلك بعد do you think نستخدم الجملة الخبرية العادية (فاعل ثم فعل).

3 .... to prove how good you are at something, or just to meet other people?

– بعد how نستخدم الصفة إذا كان فى الجملة v. to be ونستخدم الحال إذا كان فعلًا أساسيًا آخر.

4 A) I'm definitely going to try hockey.

B) A good choice. I think you'll be very good at it.

– عندما يقرر الشخص فعل شىء مثل لعب الهوكى فإنه يستخدم be going to + inf أما من يعتقد أنه سيكون جيدًا أو سيئًا فى هذه اللعبة فسوف يستخدم will + inf. للتنبؤ.

5 It is easy to get into bad habits, ...

– هذا التعبير يتكون من (It + is + صفة + to + inf.) بمعنى من السهل أن .... ويمكن استخدام أى صفة فى هذه الصيغة.

It is necessary to work hard to achieve our goals.

6 It isn't always easy to cooperate with other people, especially when you are a teenager.

– لاحظ استخدام جملتين فى زمن المضارع البسيط مع when لأن الجملتين تعبران عن حقيقة ثابتة.

7 .... not be afraid to work or study independently to be successful.

– استخدمنا بعد afraid (to + inf.) ويمكن أيضًا استخدام حرف الجر (of + noun/v-ing)

– لاحظ أيضًا أن صيغتى الفعل قبل وبعد أداة العطف (or) واحدة فى المصدر.

8 Do not stop doing something when it becomes difficult.

– استخدم بعد الفعل (stop) صيغة (verb + ing) بمعنى يتوقف عن، أما لو جاء بعدها (المصدر + to) فتكون بمعنى يتوقف لكى.

On his way home, he stopped to buy some flowers.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The police need some other clues to .... that the thief is guilty.
a) suggest b) prove c) improve d) approve

2 To be successful, the members of a sports team must .... with each other.
a) cooperate b) leave c) pass d) prove

3 Don't let anything .... you. You should concentrate.
a) discover b) distract c) distort d) distinguish

4 Running your own business may be the most important .... you can take in life.
a) opinion b) change c) issue d) decision

5 You should set .... for yourself at the beginning of each school year.
a) areas b) methods c) goals d) standards

6 Showing .... is necessary when we want to lead a better life.
a) intolerance b) arrogance c) tolerance d) violence

7 Hassan doesn't like working in teams, so he prefers .... sports.
a) normal b) individual c) industrial d) special

8 A .... is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.
a) teenager b) kid c) grown up d) toddler

9 It is believed that yoga is a very .... technique for relieving stress.
a) affecting b) effective c) impressed d) excited

10 Most young people now .... on the Internet for getting news.
a) apply b) imply c) reply d) rely

11 The school uses a .... of modern and traditional methods for teaching reading.
a) corporation b) mixer c) combination d) blend

12 She's been trying to pass her driving test for two years and fortunately she's finally ....
a) succeeded b) failed c) struggled d) accepted

13 For animals and humans, ... is important for survival.
a) corporation b) cooperation c) procession d) precession

14 The economic .... in Egypt and Arab countries is getting better.
a) location b) occasion c) situation d) site

15 Parents should encourage their sons to .... with only good people.
a) depend b) fix c) box d) mix

16 Most children are fond of watching all kinds of ....
a) carton b) cartoon c) karate d) kung fu

17 People .... my own age can do this kind of sport.
a) of b) in c) on d) with

18 You aren't allowed to enter. You are not a/an .... in the club.
a) game b) individual c) member d) sport

19 I think you can solve this problem .... your own.
a) of b) in c) with d) on

20 The police came here to make .... there was no violence in the demonstration.
a) sure b) way c) up d) free

21 The .... is the person who is in charge of a magazine or a newspaper.
a) illustrator b) editor c) designer d) photographer

22 A/An .... is someone whose job is to draw pictures for books or magazines.
a) editor b) illustrator c) photographer d) director

23 A lot of universities have their own .... teams to take part in local competitions.
a) sport b) sport's c) sporty d) sports

24 More and more smokers are trying to give up their bad ....
a) custom b) habit c) tradition d) relation

25 Who do you trust to .... responsibility for our company when you are away?
a) take b) give c) catch d) steal

26 You can always contact me for .... and support.
a) advise b) advice c) advisable d) advisor

27 I'm .... going to buy this dress as long as you like it that much.
a) horribly b) slightly c) terribly d) definitely

28 A doctor's first .... is to take care of the patients.
a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition

29 The police insisted that it is absolutely .... to keep the information secret.
a) essential b) vain c) free d) occupied

30 This training aims at improving .... skills of the company's staff.
a) attaching b) link c) contracting d) communication

31 We all should encourage teenagers to change their bad habits .... good ones.
a) of b) into c) for d) at

32 Mahmoud has to care for his old parents who can no longer live ....
a) independently b) independent c) dependently d) independence